Application Note

BRT_AN_033

BT81X Series Programming Guide

Version 2.3

Issue Date: 24-11-2022

This application note describes the process and practice required to program BT81X Series, (BT815/6 and **BT817/8** chips).

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Table of Contents

1 Introduction 11
1.1 Scope 11
1.2 Intended Audience 11
1.3 Conventions 11
1.4 API Reference Definitions 11
1.5 What's new in BT81X Series? 12
1.6 What is new in BT817/8? 13
2 Programming Model 14
2.1 Address Space 14
2.2 Data Flow Diagram 15
2.3 Read Chip Identification Code (ID) 16
2.4 Initialization Sequence during Boot Up 16
2.5 PWM Control 17
2.6 RGB Color Signal 17
2.7 Touch Screen 18
2.8 Flash Interface 19
2.9 Audio Routines 19
2.9.1 Sound Effect 19
2.9.2 Audio Playback 20
2.10 Graphics Routines 21
2.10.1 Getting Started 21
2.10.2 Coordinate Range and Pixel Precision 22
2.10.3 Screen Rotation 22
2.10.4 Drawing Pattern 24
2.10.5 Bitmap Transformation Matrix 26
2.10.6 Color and Transparency 26
2.10.7 Performance 27
3 Register Description 28
3.1 Graphics Engine Registers 28

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

3.2 Audio Engine Registers 32
3.3 Flash Registers 34
3.4 Touch Screen Engine Registers 35
3.4.1 Overview 35
3.4.2 Common Registers 35
3.4.3 Resistive Touch Engine 37
3.4.4 Capacitive Touch Engine 40
3.4.5 Calibration 45
3.5 Coprocessor Engine Registers 45
3.6 Miscellaneous Registers 46
3.7 Special Registers 51
4 Display List Commands 54
4.1 Graphics State 54
4.2 Command Encoding 54
4.3 Command Groups 55
4.3.1 Setting Graphics State 55
4.3.2 Drawing Actions 55
4.3.3 Execution Control 55
4.4 ALPHA_FUNC 56
4.5 BEGIN 56
4.6 BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT 57
4.7 BITMAP_HANDLE 58
4.8 BITMAP_LAYOUT 59
4.9 BITMAP_LAYOUT_H 63
4.10 BITMAP_SIZE 63
4.11 BITMAP_SIZE_H 64
4.12 BITMAP_SOURCE 65
4.13 BITMAP_SWIZZLE 66
4.14 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A 68
4.15 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_B 69

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.16 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_C 69
4.17 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_D 70
4.18 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_E 70
4.19 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_F 71
4.20 BLEND_FUNC 72
4.21 CALL 73
4.22 CELL.....74
4.23 CLEAR 74
4.24 CLEAR_COLOR_A 75
4.25 CLEAR_COLOR_RGB 76
4.26 CLEAR_STENCIL.....77
4.27 CLEAR_TAG 77
4.28 COLOR_A 77
4.29 COLOR_MASK.....78
4.30 COLOR_RGB 79
4.31 DISPLAY 80
4.32 END.....80
4.33 JUMP.....81
4.34 LINE_WIDTH 81
4.35 MACRO.....82
4.36 NOP 82
4.37 PALETTE_SOURCE 83
4.38 POINT_SIZE.....83
4.39 RESTORE_CONTEXT 84
4.40 RETURN 85
4.41 SAVE_CONTEXT 85
4.42 SCISSOR_SIZE.....86
4.43 SCISSOR_XY 87
4.44 STENCIL_FUNC 88

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.45 STENCIL_MASK 88
4.46 STENCIL_OP 89
4.47 TAG 90
4.48 TAG_MASK 90
4.49 VERTEX2F 91
4.50 VERTEX2II 92
4.51 VERTEX_FORMAT 92
4.52 VERTEX_TRANSLATE_X 93
4.53 VERTEX_TRANSLATE_Y 94
5 Coprocessor Engine 95
5.1 Command FIFO 95
5.2 Widgets 96
5.2.1 Common Physical Dimensions 96
5.2.2 Color Settings 97
5.2.3 Caveat 97
5.3 Interaction with RAM_DL 97
5.3.1 Synchronization between MCU & Coprocessor Engine 98
5.4 ROM and RAM Fonts 98
5.4.1 Legacy Font Metrics Block 98
5.4.2 Example to find the width of character 99
5.4.3 Extended Font Metrics Block 99
5.4.4 ROM Fonts (Built-in Fonts) 101
5.4.5 Using Custom Font 102
5.5 Animation support 103
5.6 String Formatting 105
5.6.1 The Flag Characters 105
5.6.2 The Field Width 105
5.6.3 The Precision 106
5.6.4 The Conversion Specifier 106
5.7 Coprocessor Faults 107
5.8 Coprocessor Graphics State 108

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.9 Parameter OPTION 109
5.10 Resources Utilization 110
5.11 Command list 110
5.12 Command Groups 110
5.13 CMD_APILEVEL 112
5.14 CMD_DLSTART 112
5.15 CMD_INTERRUPT 113
5.16 CMD_COLDSTART 113
5.17 CMD_SWAP 114
5.18 CMD_APPEND 114
5.19 CMD_REGREAD 115
5.20 CMD_MEMWRITE 115
5.21 CMD_INFLATE 116
5.22 CMD_INFLATE2 117
5.23 CMD_LOADIMAGE 117
5.24 CMD_MEDIAFIFO 120
5.25 CMD_PLAYVIDEO 120
5.26 CMD_VIDEOSTART 121
5.27 CMD_VIDEOFRAME 122
5.28 CMD_MEMCRC 123
5.29 CMD_MEMZERO 123
5.30 CMD_MEMSET 124
5.31 CMD_MEMCPY 124
5.32 CMD_BUTTON 125
5.33 CMD_CLOCK 126
5.34 CMD_FGCOLOR 129
5.35 CMD_BGCOLOR 130
5.36 CMD_GRADCOLOR 130
5.37 CMD_GAUGE 131

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.38 CMD_GRADIENT 134
5.39 CMD_GRADIENTA 136
5.40 CMD_KEYS 137
5.41 CMD_PROGRESS 140
5.42 CMD_SCROLLBAR 141
5.43 CMD_SLIDER 143
5.44 CMD_DIAL 144
5.45 CMD_TOGGLE 146
5.46 CMD_FILLWIDTH 147
5.47 CMD_TEXT 148
5.48 CMD_SETBASE 150
5.49 CMD_NUMBER 151
5.50 CMD_LOADIDENTITY 152
5.51 CMD_SETMATRIX 152
5.52 CMD_GETMATRIX 153
5.53 CMD_GETPTR 153
5.54 CMD_GETPROPS 154
5.55 CMD_SCALE 155
5.56 CMD_ROTATE 156
5.57 CMD_ROTATEAROUND 157
5.58 CMD_TRANSLATE 158
5.59 CMD_CALIBRATE 159
5.60 CMD_CALIBRATESUB 159
5.61 CMD_SETROTATE 160
5.62 CMD_SPINNER 161
5.63 CMD_SCREENSAVER 162
5.64 CMD_SKETCH 163
5.65 CMD_STOP 164
5.66 CMD_SETFONT 165

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.67 CMD_SETFONT2 165
5.68 CMD_SETSCRATCH 166
5.69 CMD_ROMFONT 167
5.70 CMD_RESETFONTS 167
5.71 CMD_TRACK 168
5.72 CMD_SNAPSHOT 171
5.73 CMD_SNAPSHOT2 171
5.74 CMD_SETBITMAP 173
5.75 CMD_LOGO 174
5.76 CMD_FLASHERASE 174
5.77 CMD_FLASHWRITE 174
5.78 CMD_FLASHPROGRAM 175
5.79 CMD_FLASHREAD 176
5.80 CMD_APPENDF 176
5.81 CMD_FLASHUPDATE 177
5.82 CMD_FLASHDETACH 177
5.83 CMD_FLASHATTACH 178
5.84 CMD_FLASHFAST 178
5.85 CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL 179
5.86 CMD_FLASHSPITX 179
5.87 CMD_FLASHSPIRX 179
5.88 CMD_CLEARCACHE 180
5.89 CMD_FLASHSOURCE 181
5.90 CMD_VIDEOSTARTF 181
5.91 CMD_ANIMSTART 181
5.92 CMD_ANIMSTARTRAM 182
5.93 CMD_RUNANIM 183
5.94 CMD_ANIMSTOP 184
5.95 CMD_ANIMXY 185

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.96 CMD_ANIMDRAW 185
5.97 CMD_ANIMFRAME 185
5.98 CMD_ANIMFRAMERAM 186
5.99 CMD_SYNC 187
5.100 CMD_BITMAP_TRANSFORM 188
5.101 CMD_TESTCARD 189
5.102 CMD_WAIT 190
5.103 CMD_NEWLIST 190
5.104 CMD_ENDLIST 191
5.105 CMD_CALLLIST 192
5.106 CMD_RETURN 192
5.107 CMD_FONTCACHE 193
5.108 CMD_FONTCACHEQUERY 194
5.109 CMD_GETIMAGE 194
5.110 CMD_HSF 195
5.111 CMD_PCLKFREQ 196
6 ASTC 198
6.1 ASTC RAM Layout 198
6.2 ASTC Flash Layout 199
7 Contact Information 200
Appendix A – References 201
Document References 201
Acronyms and Abbreviations 201
Appendix B – List of Tables/ Figures/ Registers/ Code Snippets 202
List of Tables 202
List of Figures 202
List of Registers 203
List of Code Snippets 205

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Appendix C – Revision History 207

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

1 Introduction

This document captures the programming details for the **BT81X** Series chips (BT815/6, BT817/8) including graphics commands, widget commands and configurations to control **BT81X** Series chips for smooth and vibrant screen effects.

The **BT81X** Series chips are graphics controllers with add-on features such as audio playback and touch capabilities. They consist of a rich set of graphics objects that can be used for displaying various menus and screen shots for a range of products including home appliances, toys, industrial machinery, home automation, elevators, and many more.

1.1 Scope

This document will be useful to understand the command set and demonstrate the ease of usage in the examples given for each specific instruction. In addition, it also covers various power modes, audio, and touch features as well as their usage.

The descriptions in this document are applicable to both BT815/6 and **BT817/8**, unless specified otherwise.

Within this document, the endianness of commands, register values, and data in **RAM_G** are in *little-endian* format.

Information on pin settings, hardware characteristics and hardware configurations can be found in the BT815/6 or **BT817/8** data sheet.

1.2 Intended Audience

The intended audience of this document are Software Programmers and System Designers who develop graphical user interface (**GUI**) applications on any processor with an **SPI** master interface.

1.3 Conventions

All values are in decimal by default.

The values with **0x** are in hexadecimal**.**

The values with **0b'** are in binary.

Host refers to the **MCU/MPU** with SPI master interface connecting with **EVE**.

Host commands refer to the **EVE** specific commands defined in the Serial Data Protocol section of the datasheet.

1.4 API Reference Definitions

The following table provides the functionality and nomenclature of the APIs used in this document.

wr8()	write 8 bits to intended address location
wr16()	write 16 bits to intended address location
wr32()	write 32 bits to intended address location
rd8()	read 8 bits from intended address location
rd16()	read 16 bits from intended address location

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

rd32()	read 32 bits from intended address location
cmd()	write 32 bits data to command **FIFO** i.e. **RAM_CMD**
cmd_*()	Write 32 bits commands with its necessary parameters to command **FIFO** i.e. **RAM_CMD**.
dl()	Write 32 bits display list command to **RAM_DL**.
host_command()	send host command in host command protocol

Table 1 – API Reference Definitions

1.5 What's new in BT81X Series?

Compared to the previous generation **FT81X** series, the BT81X Series introduces several enhanced features:

- QSPI NOR flash interface
- Adaptive Scalable Texture Compression(ASTC) format bitmap
- Unicode text display
- Animation support

The tables below captures the new and updated commands in BT81X for these features:

Coprocessor Commands	BT81X	Remarks
CMD_ANIMDRAW *CMD_ANIMFRAME* *CMD_ANIMSTART* *CMD_ANIMSTOP* *CMD_ANIMXY*	New	Animation feature related coprocessor commands
CMD_APPENDF	New	Append flash data to display list
CMD_CLEARCACHE	New	Clear the flash cache
CMD_FLASHATTACH *CMD_FLASHDETACH* *CMD_FLASHERASE* *CMD_FLASHFAST* *CMD_FLASHREAD* *CMD_FLASHSOURCE* *CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL* *CMD_FLASHSPIRX* *CMD_FLASHSPITX* *CMD_FLASHUPDATE* *CMD_FLASHWRITE*	New	Flash interface operation related coprocessor commands
CMD_FILLWIDTH	New	Set the line width for the text of cmd_text and cmd_button
CMD_GRADIENTA	New	Draw a smooth color gradient with transparency
CMD_INFLATE2	New	Decompress data into memory with more options: **OPT_FLASH**, **OPT_MEDIAFIFO**
CMD_RESETFONTS	New	Loads a ROM font into a bitmap handle
CMD_ROTATEAROUND	New	Apply a rotation and scale around (x,y) for bitmap
CMD_VIDEOSTARTF	New	Initialize video frame decoder for the data in flash memory
CMD_TEXT *CMD_BUTTON* *CMD_TOGGLE*	Changed	Added option : **OPT_FORMAT**

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

CMD_LOADIMAGE *CMD_PLAYVIDEO* *CMD_VIDEOSTARTF*	Changed	Supports data stored in flash
Display List	**BT81X**	**Remarks**
BITMAP_SOURCE	Changed	Expand the address bit field to access **ASTC** bitmap in flash
BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A BITMAP_TRANSFORM_B BITMAP_TRANSFORM_D BITMAP_TRANSFORM_E	Changed	Added new precision control : signed fixed point 1.15
BITMAP_LAYOUT	Changed	Added a new valid value for format parameter: **GLFORMAT**
BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT	New	Support more bitmap formats, especially **ASTC** compression formats
BITMAP_SWIZZLE	New	Set the source for the r,g,b,a channels of a bitmap

Table 2 – Updated Commands in BT81X

1.6 What is new in BT817/8?

BT817/8 maintains backward compatibility with the previous BT815/6 ICs. Any application built for BT815/6 is able to run on the BT817/8 series without any changes. In short, BT817/8 is an improved version of BT815/6.

Compared to BT815/6, BT817/8 has a **1.5x** graphics engine performance improvement. In addition, it introduces many enhancements including:

- Programmable timing to adjust HSYNC and VSYNC timing, enabling interface to numerous displays
- Add Horizontal Scan out Filter to support non-square pixel LCD display
- Adaptive Hsync mode to delay the start of scanout line while keeping PCLK running
- Supports Animation in **RAM_G**
- Enable constructing command list in **RAM_G**
- New font cache mechanism for custom fonts whose glyph is in flash

To facilitate the features above, there are the new registers and commands introduced for the **BT817/8.** They can be found in this document with the note "**BT817/8** specific".

Besides that, two commands in BT815/6 are improved in **BT817/8**:

- **CMD_GETPTR**
- **CMD_GETPROPS**

However, these two commands are kept in same functionality for compatibility unless **CMD_APILEVEL** is sent with parameter level 2.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2 Programming Model

EVE appears to the host MCU as a memory-mapped SPI device. The host MCU sends commands and data over the serial protocol described in the data sheet.

2.1 Address Space

All memory and registers are memory mapped into 22-bit address space with a 2-bit SPI command prefix: Prefix 0'b00 for read and 0'b10 for write to the address space, 0'b01is reserved for Host Commands and 0'b11 undefined. Please refer to the datasheet about the serial data protocol used to read/write these addresses. The memory space definitions are provided in the following table:

Name	Start Address	End Address	Size (bytes)	Description
RAM_G	0x000000	0x0FFFFF	1024 Ki	General purpose graphics **RAM**, also called main memory in this document
ROM_FONT	0x1E0000	0x2FFFFB	1152 Ki	Font table and bitmap
ROM_FONTROOT	0x2FFFFC	0x2FFFFF	4	Font table pointer address
RAM_DL	0x300000	0x301FFF	8 Ki	Display list **RAM**
RAM_REG	0x302000	0x302FFF	4 Ki	Registers
RAM_CMD	0x308000	0x308FFF	4 Ki	Command **FIFO**
RAM_ERR_REPORT	0x309800	0x3098FF	128	Coprocessor fault report area
Flash memory	0x800000	Depending on attached flash chip, up to 0x107FFFFF	Up to 256Mi	External NOR flash memory. It can **NOT** be addressed by **host** directly. The address is used by the following commands only for rendering **ASTC** image only: **CMD_SETBITMAP** **BITMAP_SOURCE**

Table 3 – Memory Map

Note:

1. The addresses beyond this table are reserved and shall not be read or written unless otherwise specified.

2. To access the flash memory, host needs leverage the coprocessor commands, such as

   - **CMD_FLASHREAD**
   - **CMD_FLASHWRITE**
   - **CMD_FLASHUPDATE**
   - **…….**

These commands uses **zero** based address to address the blocks of flash. See **Flash Interface** for more details.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2.2 Data Flow Diagram

Figure 1 describes the data flow between 1) **external components** (MCU and Flash) 2) **internal components of EVE**. Please note that the direct write from **MCU** to **RAM_DL** requires careful actions to sync up the read/write pointers in the respective registers of **EVE** because coprocessor engine may also write the generated display list commands into **RAM_DL**.

To save such effort, the better approach is to write the display list command to **RAM_CMD** and make coprocessor update the **RAM_DL** accordingly.

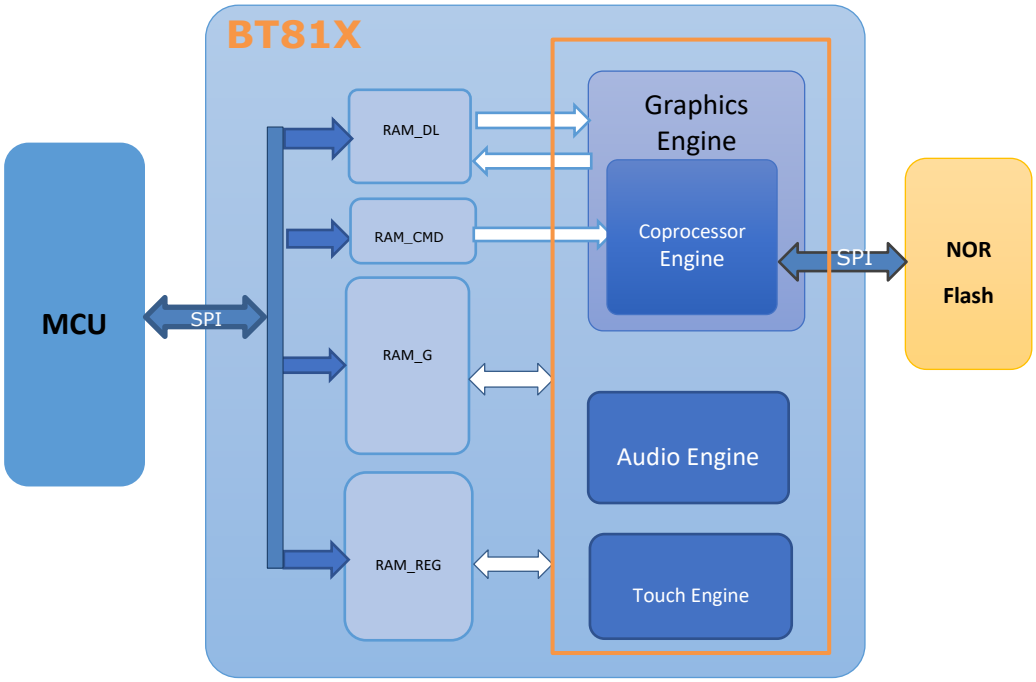


Figure 1 – BT81X data flow

The data here refers to the following items:

- **Display list :** Instructions for graphics engine to render the screen
- **Coprocessor command:** Predefined commands by coprocessor engine
- **Bitmap data:** Pixel representation in EVE defined formats: such as RGB565, ASTC etc.
- **JPEG/PNG stream:** Image data in PNG/JPEG format conforming to Eve requirement, for coprocessor engine to decode.
- **MJPEG stream:** The video data in MJPEG format conforming to Eve requirement for coprocessor engine to decode.
- **Audio stream:** uLaw, ADPCM, PCM encoded audio samples, for audio engine to decode
- **Flash image:** data to be programmed into flash or data read back from flash.
- **Register values:** read or write the registers.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2.3 Read Chip Identification Code (ID)

After reset or reboot, the chip ID can be read from address 0xC0000 to 0xC0003.

To read the chip identification code, users shall read 4 bytes of data from address 0xC0000 before the application overwrites this address, since it is located in **RAM_G**.

The following table describes the data to be read:

0xC0003	0xC0002	0xC0001	0xC0000
0x00	0x01	0x10 for FT810 0x11 for FT811 0x12 for FT812 0x13 for FT813 0x15 for BT815 0x16 for BT816 0x17 for BT817 0x18 for BT818	0x08

Table 4 – Read Chip Identification Code

2.4 Initialization Sequence during Boot Up

During EVE boot up, the following steps are required:

1. Send host command "**CLKEXT**" if the PLL input is from external crystal oscillator or external clock.
2. Send host command "**CLKSEL**" to select system clock frequency if the non-default system clock is to be used.
   By default the system clock is set to 60MHz. However, 72MHz is recommended for better performance.
3. Send Host command "**ACTIVE**".
4. Send Host command "**RST_PULSE**"
5. Read **REG_ID** until **0x7C** is returned.
6. Read **REG_CPURESET** till **EVE** goes into the working status, i.e., zero is returned.
7. Configure display control timing registers, except **REG_PCLK**
8. Write first display list to **RAM_DL**.
9. Write **REG_DLSWAP** to start graphics engine rendering process with first display list
10. Enable backlight control for display panel
11. Write **REG_PCLK** to configure the PCLK frequency of display panel, which leads to the output of the first display list

```
host_command(CLKEXT);//send command "CLKEXT" to use the external clock source
host_command(CLKSEL);//select the system clock frequency
host_command(ACTIVE);//send host command "ACTIVE" to wake up
host_command(RST_PULSE);//send host command "RST_PULSE" to reset


while (0x7C != rd8(REG_ID));
while (0x0  != rd16(REG_CPURESET)); //Check if EVE is in working status.

wr32(REG_FREQUENCY, 0x3938700); //Configure the system clock to 60MHz.

/* Configure display registers - demonstration for WVGA 800x480 resolution */
wr16(REG_HCYCLE, 928);
wr16(REG_HOFFSET, 88);
wr16(REG_HSYNC0, 0);
wr16(REG_HSYNC1, 48);
wr16(REG_VCYCLE, 525);
wr16(REG_VOFFSET, 32);
wr16(REG_VSYNC0, 0);
wr16(REG_VSYNC1, 3);
wr8(REG_SWIZZLE, 0);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
wr8(REG_PCLK_POL, 1);
wr8(REG_CSPREAD, 0);
wr16(REG_HSIZE, 800);
wr16(REG_VSIZE, 480);

/* Write first display list to display list memory RAM_DL*/
wr32(RAM_DL+0,CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(0,0,0));
wr32(RAM_DL+4,CLEAR(1,1,1));
wr32(RAM_DL+8,DISPLAY());

wr8(REG_DLSWAP,0x02);//display list swap

/* Enable backlight of display panel */
#if defined(FT81X_ENABLE)
    wr16(REG_GPIOX_DIR, 0xffff);
    wr16(REG_GPIOX, 0xffff);
#else
    wr8(REG_GPIO_DIR,0xff);
    wr8(REG_GPIO,0xff);
#endif

wr8(REG_PCLK,2); //Configure the PCLK divisor to 2, i.e. PCLK = System CLK/2
```

Code Snippet 1 – Initialization Sequence

2.5 PWM Control

The PWM signal is controlled by two registers: **REG_PWM_HZ** and **REG_PWM_DUTY**.

REG_PWM_HZ specifies the PWM output frequency.

REG_PWM_DUTY specifies the PWM output duty cycle.

2.6 RGB Color Signal

The RGB color signal is carried over 24 signals - 8 each for red, green and blue. Several registers affect the operation of these signals. The order of these operations in the display output system is as follows:

REG_DITHER enables color dither. To improve the image quality, **EVE** applies a 2×2 color dither matrix to output pixels. The dither option improves half-tone appearance on displays, even on 1-bit displays.

REG_OUTBITS gives the bit width of each color channel. The default is zero, meaning 8 bits each channel. Lower values mean that fewer bits are output for the color channel. This value also affects dither computation.

REG_SWIZZLE controls the arrangement of the output color pins, to help PCB routing with different LCD panel arrangements. Bit 0 of the register causes the order of bits in each color channel to be reversed. Bits 1-3 control the RGB order. Bit 1 set causes R and B channels to be swapped. Bit 3 is rotate enable. If bit 3 is set, then (R, G, B) is rotated right if bit 2 is one, or left if bit 2 is zero. Please refer to BT817/8 datasheet for more details.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2.7 Touch Screen

The raw touch screen (x, y) values are available in register **REG_TOUCH_RAW_XY**. The range of these values is 0-1023. If the touch screen is not being pressed, both registers read 0xFFFF.

These touch values are transformed into screen coordinates using the matrix in registers **REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A-F**. The post-transform coordinates are available in register **REG_TOUCH_SCREEN_XY**. If the touch screen is not being pressed, both registers read 0x8000 (-32768). The values for **REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM A-F** may be computed using an on-screen calibration process. If the screen is being touched, the screen coordinates are looked up in the screen's tag buffer, delivering a final 8-bit tag value, in **REG_TOUCH_TAG**. Because the tag lookup takes a full frame, and touch coordinates change continuously, the original (x, y) used for the tag lookup is also available in **REG_TOUCH_TAG_XY**.

Screen touch pressure is available in **REG_TOUCH_RZ**. This register gives the resistance of the touch screen press, so lower values indicate more pressure. The register's range is 0 (maximum pressure) to 32767 (no touch). Because the values depend on the particular screen, and the instrument used for pressing (stylus, fingertip, gloved finger, etc.) a calibration or setup step shall be used to discover the useful range of resistance values.

REG_TOUCH_MODE controls the frequency of touch sampling. **TOUCHMODE_CONTINUOUS** is continuous sampling. Writing **TOUCHMODE_ONESHOT** causes a single sample to occur. **TOUCHMODE_FRAME** causes a sample at the start of each frame. **TOUCHMODE_OFF** stops all sampling.

REG_TOUCH_ADC_MODE selects single-ended (**ADC_SINGLE_ENDED**) or differential (**ADC_DIFFERENTIAL**) ADC operation. Single-ended consumes less power, differential gives more accurate positioning. **REG_TOUCH_CHARGE** specifies how long to drive the touchscreen voltage before sampling the pen detect input. The default value 3000 gives a delay of 0.3ms which is suitable for most screens.

REG_TOUCH_RZTHRESH specifies a threshold for touchscreen resistance. If the measured touchscreen resistance is greater than this threshold, then no touch is reported. The default value is 65535, so all touches are reported.

REG_TOUCH_SETTLE specifies how long to drive the touchscreen voltage before sampling the position. For screens with a large capacitance, this value should be increased. For low capacitance screens this value can be decreased to reduce "on" time and save power.

REG_TOUCH_OVERSAMPLE controls the oversampling factor used by the touchscreen system. Increase this value to improve noise rejection if necessary. For systems with low noise, this value can be lowered to reduce "on" time and save power.

Touch screen 32-bit register updates are atomic: all 32 bits are updated in a single cycle. So when reading an XY register, for example, both (x, y) values are guaranteed to be from the same sensing cycle. When the sensing cycle is complete, and the registers have been updated, the **INT_CONV_COMPLETE** interrupt is triggered.

As well as the above high-level samples, the direct 10-bit **ADC** values are available in two registers, **REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_XY** and **REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_Z1Z2**. These registers are laid out as follows:

31	30 29 28 27 26	25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11 10	9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
S		X		Y
		Z1		Z2

The S field is 0 if a touch is being sensed, in which case all fields hold their sensed values. If S is 1, then no touch is sensed and all fields should be ignored.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2.8 Flash Interface

To access an attached flash chip, **EVE** provides the necessary registers to read/write flash with very high throughput. The graphics engine can fetch these graphics assets directly without going through the external host MCU, thus significantly off-loading the host MCU from feeding display contents.

The register **REG_FLASH_STATUS** indicates the state of the flash subsystem. During boot up, the flash state is **FLASH_STATE_INIT**. After detection has completed, flash is in the state **FLASH_STATE_DETACHED** or **FLASH_STATE_BASIC**, depending on whether an attached flash device was detected. If no device is detected, then all the SPI output signals are driven low. When the host MCU calls **CMD_FLASHFAST**, the flash system attempts to go to full-speed mode, setting the state to **FLASH_STATE_FULL**. At any time, users can call **CMD_FLASHDETACH** in order to disable the flash communications. This tri-states all flash signals, allowing a suitably connected MCU to drive the flash directly. Alternatively, in the detached state, commands **CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL**, **CMD_FLASHSPITX** and **CMD_FLASHSPIRX** can be used to control the SPI bus. If detached, the host MCU can call **CMD_FLASHATTACH** to re-establish communication with the flash device. Direct rendering of ASTC based bitmaps from flash is only possible in **FLASH_STATE_FULL**. After modifying the contents of flash, the MCU should clear the on-chip bitmap cache by calling **CMD_CLEARCACHE**.

Command	DETACHED	BASIC	FULL	Operation
CMD_FLASHERASE		✓	✓	Erase all of flash
CMD_FLASHWRITE		✓	✓	Write data from **RAM_CMD** to blank flash
CMD_FLASHUPDATE		✓	✓	Read the flash and update to flash if different
CMD_FLASHPROGRAM		✓	✓	Write data from **RAM_G** to blank flash
CMD_FLASHREAD		✓	✓	Reads data from flash to main memory
CMD_FLASHDETACH		✓	✓	Detach from flash
CMD_FLASHATTACH	✓			Attach to flash
CMD_FLASHFAST		✓		Enter full-speed(fast) mode
CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL	✓			SPI bus: deselect device
CMD_FLASHSPITX	✓			SPI bus: write bytes
CMD_FLASHSPIRX	✓			SPI bus: read bytes

Table 5 – Flash Interface states and commands

To support different vendors of SPI NOR flash chips, the first block (4096 bytes) of the flash is reserved for the flash driver called **BLOB** file which is provided by **Bridgetek**. The **BLOB** file shall be programmed first so that flash state can enter into full-speed (fast) mode. Please refer to BT81x datasheet for more details.

2.9 Audio Routines

The audio engine has two functionalities: synthesize built-in sound effects with selected pitches and play back the audio data in **RAM_G**.

2.9.1 Sound Effect

The audio engine has various sound data built-in to work as a sound synthesizer. Sample code to play C8 on the xylophone:

```
wr8(REG_VOL_SOUND,0xFF); //set the volume to maximum
wr16(REG_SOUND, (0x6C<< 8) | 0x41); // C8 MIDI note on xylophone
wr8(REG_PLAY, 1); // play the sound
```

Code Snippet 2 – Play C8 on the Xylophone

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Sample code to stop sound play:

```
wr16(REG_SOUND,0x0);//configure "silence" sound to be played
wr8(REG_PLAY,1);//play sound
Sound_status = rd8(REG_PLAY);//1-play is going on, 0-play has finished
```

Code snippet 3 – Stop Playing Sound

To avoid a pop sound on reset or power state change, trigger a "mute" sound, and wait for it to complete (i.e. **REG_PLAY** contains the value of 0). This sets the audio output pin to 0 levels. On reboot, the audio engine plays back the "unmute" sound.

```
wr16(REG_SOUND,0x60);//configure "mute" sound to be played
wr8(REG_PLAY,1);//play sound
Sound_status = rd8(REG_PLAY);//1-play is going on, 0-play has finished
```

Code snippet 4 – Avoid Pop Sound

Note: Refer to BT817/8 datasheet for more information on the sound synthesizer and audio playback.

2.9.2 Audio Playback

The audio engine supports an audio playback feature. For the audio data in the **RAM_G** to play back, it requires the start address in **REG_PLAYBACK_START** to be 8 bytes aligned. In addition, the length of audio data specified by **REG_PLAYBACK_LENGTH** is required to be 8 Bytes aligned.

Three types of audio formats are supported: 4 Bit IMA ADPCM, 8 Bit signed PCM, 8 Bit u-Law. For IMA ADPCM format, please note the byte order: within one byte, the first sample (4 bits) shall be located from bit 0 to bit 3, while the second sample (4 bits) shall be located from bit 4 to bit 7.

To learn how to play back the audio data, please check the sample code below:

```
wr8(REG_VOL_PB,0xFF);//configure audio playback volume
wr32(REG_PLAYBACK_START,0);//configure audio buffer starting address
wr32(REG_PLAYBACK_LENGTH,100*1024);//configure audio buffer length
wr16(REG_PLAYBACK_FREQ,44100);//configure audio sampling frequency
wr8(REG_PLAYBACK_FORMAT,ULAW_SAMPLES);//configure audio format
wr8(REG_PLAYBACK_LOOP,0);//configure once or continuous playback
wr8(REG_PLAYBACK_PLAY,1);//start the audio playback
```

Code Snippet 5 – Audio Playback

```
AudioPlay_Status = rd8(REG_PLAYBACK_PLAY);//1-audio playback is going on,
0-audio playback has finished
```

Code Snippet 6 – Check the status of Audio Playback

```
wr32(REG_PLAYBACK_LENGTH,0);//configure the playback length to 0
wr8(REG_PLAYBACK_PLAY,1);    //start audio playback
```

Code Snippet 7 – Stop the Audio Playback

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2.10 Graphics Routines

This section describes graphics features and captures a few examples. Please note that the code in this section is for the purpose of illustrating the operation of Display Lists. Application will normally send the commands via **command FIFO (RAM_CMD)** instead of writing directly to **RAM_DL.**

2.10.1 Getting Started

The following example creates a screen with the text "TEXT" on it, with a red dot.

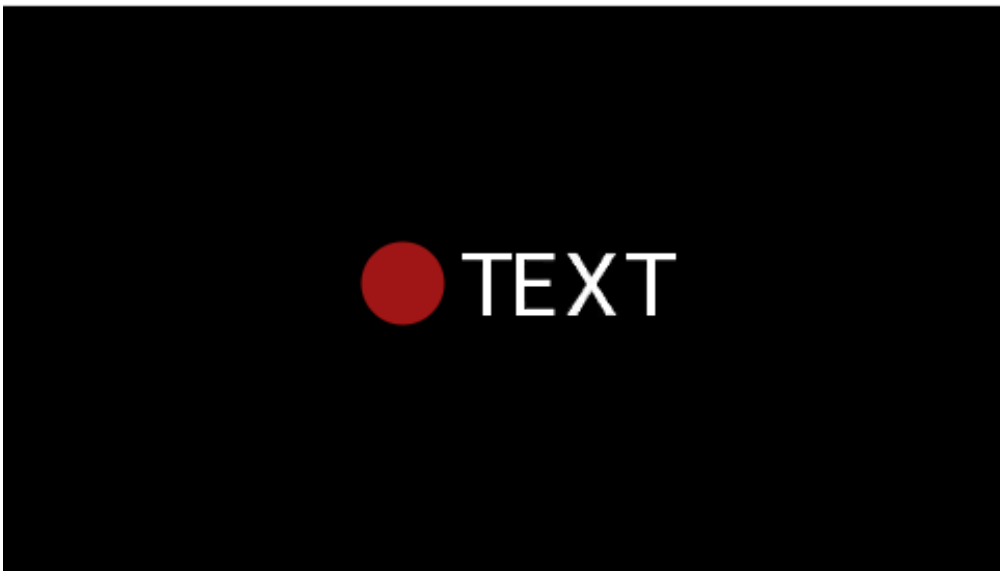


Figure 2 – Getting Started Example

The code to draw the screen is:

```
wr32(RAM_DL + 0, CLEAR(1, 1, 1));            // clear screen
wr32(RAM_DL + 4, BEGIN(BITMAPS));            // start drawing bitmaps
wr32(RAM_DL + 8, VERTEX2II(220, 110, 31, 'T')); //  ASCII T in font 31
wr32(RAM_DL + 12,VERTEX2II(244, 110, 31, 'E')); //  ASCII E in font 31
wr32(RAM_DL + 16, VERTEX2II(270, 110, 31, 'X')); // ASCII X in font 31
wr32(RAM_DL + 20, VERTEX2II(299, 110, 31, 'T')); // ASCII T in font 31
wr32(RAM_DL + 24, END());
wr32(RAM_DL + 28, COLOR_RGB(160, 22, 22)); // change colour to red
wr32(RAM_DL + 32, POINT_SIZE(320)); // set point size to 20 pixels in radius
wr32(RAM_DL + 36, BEGIN(POINTS)); // start drawing points
wr32(RAM_DL + 40, VERTEX2II(192, 133, 0, 0)); // red point
wr32(RAM_DL + 44, END());
wr32(RAM_DL + 48, DISPLAY()); // display the image
```

Code Snippet 8 – Getting Started

Upon loading the above drawing commands into **RAM_DL**, register **REG_DLSWAP** is required to be set to **0x02** in order to make the new display list active on the next frame refresh.

Note:

- The display list always starts at address **RAM_DL**
- The address always increments by 4 bytes as each command is 32 bits wide.
- Command **CLEAR** is recommended to be used before any other drawing operation, in order to put the graphics engine in a known state. The end of the display list is always flagged with the command **DISPLAY**

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2.10.2 Coordinate Range and Pixel Precision

Apart from the single pixel precision, **EVE** support a series of fractional pixel precision, which result in a different coordinate range. Users may trade the coordinate range against pixel precision. See **VERTEX_FORMAT** for more details.

Please note that the maximum screen resolution which **EVE** can render is up to 2048 by 2048 in pixels only, regardless of which pixel precision is specified.

VERTEX2F and **VERTEX_FORMAT** are the commands that enable the drawing operation to reach the full coordinate plane. The **VERTEX2II** command only allows positive screen coordinates. The **VERTEX2F** command allows negative coordinates. If the bitmap is partially off-screen, for example during a screen scroll, then it is necessary to specify negative screen coordinates.

2.10.3 Screen Rotation

REG_ROTATE controls the screen orientation. Changing the register value immediately causes the orientation of the screen to change. In addition, the coordinate system is also changed accordingly, so that all the display commands and coprocessor commands work in the rotated coordinate system.

Note: The touch transformation matrix is not affected by setting **REG_ROTATE**.

To adjust the touch screen accordingly, users are recommended to use **CMD_SETROTATE** as opposed to setting **REG_ROTATE**.

REG_ROTATE = 0 is the default landscape orientation:

REG_ROTATE = 1 is inverted landscape:

REG_ROTATE = 2 is portrait:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_ROTATE = 3 is inverted portrait:

REG_ROTATE = 4 is mirrored landscape:

REG_ROTATE = 5 is mirrored inverted landscape:

REG_ROTATE = 6 is mirrored portrait:

REG_ROTATE = 7 is mirrored inverted portrait:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

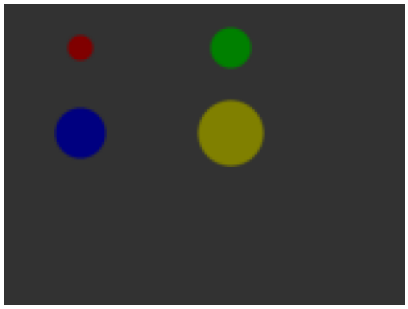
2.10.4 Drawing Pattern

The general pattern for drawing is driven by display list commands:

- **BEGIN** with one of the primitive types
- Input one or more vertices using "**VERTEX2II**" or "**VERTEX2F**", which specify the placement of the primitive on the screen
- **END** to mark the end of the primitive.

Examples

Draw points with varying radius from 5 pixels to 13 pixels with different colors:



```
//The VERTEX2F command gives the location of
the circle center
dl( COLOR_RGB(128, 0, 0) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(5 * 16) );
dl( BEGIN(POINTS) );
dl( VERTEX2F(30 * 16,17 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(0, 128, 0) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(8 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(90 * 16, 17 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(0, 0, 128) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(10 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(30 * 16, 51 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(128, 128, 0) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(13 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(90 * 16, 51 * 16) );
```

Draw lines with varying sizes from 2 pixels to 6 pixels with different colors (line width size is from the center of the line to the boundary):

```
//The VERTEX2F commands are in pairs to define
the start and finish point of the line.
dl( COLOR_RGB(128, 0, 0) );
dl( LINE_WIDTH(2 * 16) );
dl( BEGIN(LINES) );
dl( VERTEX2F(30 * 16,38 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(30 * 16,63 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(0, 128, 0) );
dl( LINE_WIDTH(4 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(60 * 16,25 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(60 * 16,63 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(128, 128, 0) );
dl( LINE_WIDTH(6 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(90 * 16, 13 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(90 * 16, 63 * 16) );
```

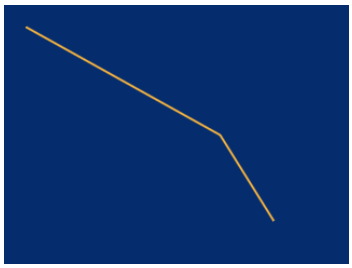
Draw rectangles with sizes of 5x25, 10x38 and 15x50 dimensions:

(Line width size is used for corner curvature, LINE_WIDTH pixels are added in both directions in addition to the rectangle dimension):

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
//The VERTEX2F commands are in pairs to
define the top left and bottom right corners
of the rectangle.
dl( COLOR_RGB(128, 0, 0) );
dl( LINE_WIDTH(1 * 16) );
dl( BEGIN(RECTS) );
dl( VERTEX2F(28 * 16,38 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(33 * 16,63 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(0, 128, 0) );
dl( LINE_WIDTH(5 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(50 * 16,25 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(60 * 16,63 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(128, 128, 0) );
dl( LINE_WIDTH(10 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(83 * 16, 13 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(98 * 16, 63 * 16) );
```

Draw line strips for sets of coordinates:



```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( BEGIN(LINE_STRIP) );
dl( VERTEX2F(5 * 16,5 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(50 * 16,30 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(63 * 16,50 * 16) );
```

Draw Edge strips for above:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( BEGIN(EDGE_STRIP_A) );
dl( VERTEX2F(5 * 16,5 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(50 * 16,30 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(63 * 16,50 * 16) );
```

Draw Edge strips for below:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( BEGIN(EDGE_STRIP_B) );
dl( VERTEX2F(5 * 16,5 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(50 * 16,30 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(63 * 16,50 * 16) );
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Draw Edge strips for right:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( BEGIN(EDGE_STRIP_R) );
dl( VERTEX2F(5 * 16,5 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(50 * 16,30 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(63 * 16,50 * 16) );
```

Draw Edge strips for left:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( BEGIN(EDGE_STRIP_L) );
dl( VERTEX2F(5 * 16,5 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(50 * 16,30 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(63 * 16,50 * 16) );
```

2.10.5 Bitmap Transformation Matrix

To achieve the bitmap transformation, the bitmap transform matrix below is specified and denoted as *m*:

$$m = \begin{bmatrix} BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A & BITMAP_TRANSFORM_B & BITMAP_TRANSFORM_C \\ BITMAP_TRANSFORM_D & BITMAP_TRANSFORM_E & BITMAP_TRANSFORM_F \end{bmatrix}$$

by default m $= \begin{bmatrix} 1.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 \\ 0.0 & 1.0 & 0.0 \end{bmatrix}$, which is named as the **identity matrix**.
The coordinates x' y' after transforming are calculated in the following equation:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = m \times \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

i.e.:

$$x' = x * A + y * B + C$$
$$y' = x * D + y * E + F$$

Where A,B,C,D,E,F stands for the values assigned by commands BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F.

2.10.6 Color and Transparency

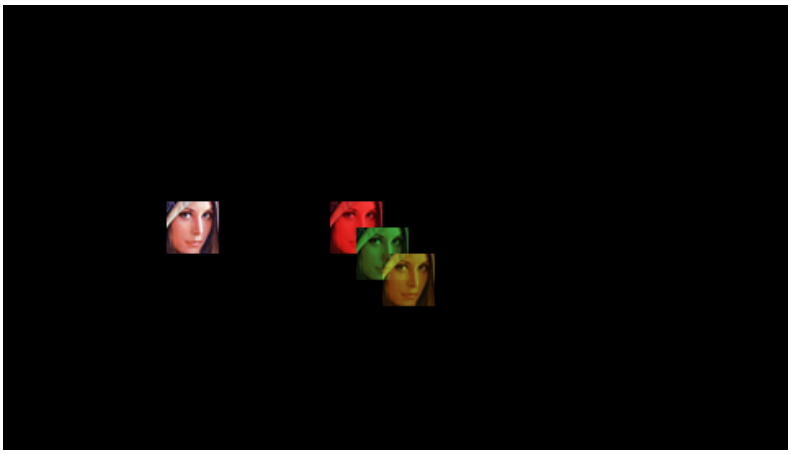
The same bitmap can be drawn in more places on the screen, in different colors and transparency:

```
dl(COLOR_RGB(255, 64, 64)); // red at (200, 120)
dl(VERTEX2II(200, 120, 0, 0));
dl(COLOR_RGB(64, 180, 64)); // green at (216, 136)
dl(VERTEX2II(216, 136, 0, 0));
dl(COLOR_RGB(255, 255, 64)); // transparent yellow at (232, 152)
dl(COLOR_A(150));
dl(VERTEX2II(232, 152, 0, 0));
```

Code Snippet 9 – Color and Transparency

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

The **COLOR_RGB** command changes the current drawing color, which colors the bitmap. If it is omitted, the default color RGB (255,255,255) will be used to render the bitmap in its original colors. The **COLOR_A** command changes the current drawing alpha, changing the transparency of the drawing: an alpha of 0 means fully transparent and an alpha of 255 is fully opaque. Here a value of 150 gives a partially transparent effect.



2.10.7 Performance

The graphics engine has no frame buffer: it uses a dynamic compositing method to build up each display line during scan out. Because of this, there is a finite amount of time available to draw each line. This time depends on the scan out parameters (decided by **REG_PCLK** and **REG_HCYCLE**) but is never less than 2048 internal clock cycles.

Some performance limits:

- The display list length must be less than 2048 instructions, because the graphics engine fetches display list commands at a rate of one per clock.
- The usual performance of rending pixels is 16 pixels per clock when the filter mode is in **NEAREST** mode, except for the following formats :
    - **TEXT8X8,**
    - **TEXTVGA**
    - **PALETTED4444/565**

  which renders 8 pixels per clock.

- For **BILINEAR** filtered pixels, the drawing rate will be reduced to ¼.

To summarize:

Filter Modes	Bitmap Formats	Drawing Rate
NEAREST	**TEXT8X8,** **TEXTVGA,** **PALETTED4444/565**	8 pixel per clock
NEAREST	The remaining formats not listed in the row above	16 pixel per clock
BILINEAR	**TEXT8X8,** **TEXTVGA,** **PALETTED4444/565**	2 pixel per clock
BILINEAR	The remaining formats not listed in the row above	4 pixel per clock

Table 6 – Bitmap Rendering Performance

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

3 Register Description

The registers are classified into the following groups according to their functionality:

- Graphics Engine Registers,
- Audio Engine Registers,
- Touch Engine Registers,
- Coprocessor Engine Registers,
- Special Registers,
- Miscellaneous Registers.

The detailed definition for each register is listed here. Most of registers are ***32*** bit wide and the special cases are marked separately. Reading from or writing to the reserved bits shall be always **zero**.

The bit fields marked **r/o** are read-only.
The bit fields marked **w/o** are write only.
The bit fields marked **r/w** are read-write.

The offset of registers are based on the address **RAM_REG**.

3.1 Graphics Engine Registers

REG_TAG Definition	
31 8	7 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x7C	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved bits	
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are updated with the tag value. The tag value here is corresponding to the touching point coordinator given in REG_TAG_X and REG_TAG_Y.	
Note: Please note the difference between REG_TAG and REG_TOUCH_TAG. REG_TAG is updated based on the X, Y given by REG_TAG_X and REG_TAG_Y. REG_TOUCH_TAG is updated based on the current touching point captured from touch screen.	

Register Definition 1 – REG_TAG Definition

REG_TAG_Y Definition	
31 11	10 0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x78	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 11: Reserved Bits	
Bit 10 – 0: These bits are set by the host as the Y coordinate of the touching point, which will enable the host to query the tag value. This register shall be used together with REG_TAG_X and REG_TAG. Normally, in the case where the host has already captured the touching point's coordinate; this register can be updated to query the tag value of respective touching point.	

Register Definition 2 – REG_TAG_Y Definition

REG_TAG_X Definition	
31 11	10 0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x74	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 11: Reserved Bits	
Bit 10 – 0: These bits are set by the host as the X coordinate of the touching point, which will enable the host to query the tag value. This register shall be used together with REG_TAG_Y and REG_TAG. Normally, in the case where the host has already captured the touching point's coordinate; this register can be updated to query the tag value of the respective touching point.	

Register Definition 3 – REG_TAG_X Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_PCLK Definition			
31	8	7	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x70		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved bits			
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set to divide the main clock for **PCLK**. If the main clock is 60Mhz and the value of these bits are set to 5, the **PCLK** will be set to 12 MHz If these bits are set to zero, it means there is no **PCLK** output.			

Register Definition 4 – REG_PCLK Definition

REG_PCLK_POL Definition		
31	1	0
reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x6C		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 1: Reserved bits		
Bit 0: This bit controls the polarity of **PCLK**. If it is set to zero, PCLK polarity is on the rising edge. If it is set to one, PCLK polarity is on the falling edge		

Register Definition 5 – REG_PCLK_POL Definition

REG_CSPREAD Definition		
31	1	0
reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x68		Reset Value: 0x1
Bit 31 – 1: Reserved bits		
Bit 0: This bit controls the transition of RGB signals with PCLK active clock edge, which helps reduce the system noise. When it is zero, all the color signals are updated at the same time. When it is one, all the color signal timings are adjusted slightly so that fewer signals change simultaneously.		

Register Definition 6 – REG_CSPREAD Definition

REG_SWIZZLE Definition			
31	4	3	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x64		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 – 4: Reserved bits			
Bit 3 – 0: These bits are set to control the arrangement of output RGB pins, which help support different LCD panels. Please see the datasheet for the exact definitions.			

Register Definition 7 – REG_SWIZZLE Definition

REG_DITHER Definition		
31	1	0
reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x60		Reset Value: 0x1
Bit 31 – 1: Reserved bits		
Bit 0: Set to 1 to enable dithering feature on RGB signals output. Set to 0 to disable dithering feature. Reading 1 from this bit means dithering feature is enabled. Reading 0 from this bit means dithering feature is disabled.		

Register Definition 8 – REG_DITHER Definition

REG_OUTBITS Definition			
31	9	8	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x5C		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 – 9: Reserved Bits			
Bit 8 – 0: These 9 bits are split into 3 groups for Red, Green and Blue color output signals: Bit 8 – 6: Red Color signal lines number. Value zero means 8 output signals. Bit 5 – 3: Green Color signal lines number. Value zero means 8 output signals. Bit 2 – 0: Blue color signal lines number. Value zero means 8 output signals. Host can write these bits to control the number of output signals for each color.			

Register Definition 9 – REG_OUTBITS Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_ROTATE Definition		
31	3	2 0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x58		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 3: Reserved bits		
Bit 2 – 0: screen rotation control bits. 0b'000: Default landscape orientation 0b'001: Inverted landscape orientation 0b'010: Portrait orientation 0b'011: Inverted portrait orientation 0b'100: Mirrored landscape orientation 0b'101: Mirrored invert landscape orientation 0b'110: Mirrored portrait orientation 0b'111: Mirrored inverted portrait orientation		
Note: Setting this register will **NOT** affect touch transform matrix.		

Register Definition 10 – REG_ROTATE Definition

REG_DLSWAP Definition		
31	2	1 0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x54		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 2: Reserved bits		
Bit 1 – 0: These bits can be set by the host to validate the display list buffer. The graphics engine will determine when to render the screen, depending on how these bits are set: 0b'01: Graphics engine will render the screen immediately after current line is scanned out. It may cause tearing effect. 0b'10: Graphics engine will render the screen immediately after current frame is scanned out. 0b'00: Do not write this value into this register. 0b'11: Do not write this value into this register. These bits can be also be read by the host to check the availability of the display list buffer. If the value is read as zero, the display list buffer is safe and ready to write. Otherwise, the host needs to wait till it becomes zero.		

Register Definition 11 – REG_DLSWAP Definition

REG_VSYNC1 Definition		
31	12	11 0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x50		Reset Value: 0xA
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits		
Bit 11 – 0: These bits specify how many lines of signal VSYNC1 takes at the start of a new frame		

Register Definition 12 – REG_VSYNC1 Definition

REG_VSYNC0 Definition		
31	12	11 0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x4C		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits		
Bit 11 – 0: The value of these bits specify how many lines of signal VSYNC0 takes at the start of a new frame		

Register Definition 13 – REG_VSYNC0 Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_VSIZE Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x48		Reset Value: 0x110	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: The value of these bits specify how many lines of pixels in one frame. The valid range is from 0 to 2047.			

Register Definition 14 – REG_VSIZE Definition

REG_VOFFSET Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x44		Reset Value: 0xC	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: The value of these bits specify how many lines taken after the start of a new frame.			

Register Definition 15 – REG_VOFFSET Definition

REG_VCYCLE Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x40		Reset Value: 0x124	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: The value of these bits specify how many lines in one frame.			

Register Definition 16 – REG_VCYCLE Definition

REG_HSYNC1 Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x3C		Reset Value: 0x29	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: The value of these bits specify how many PCLK cycles for HSYNC1 during start of line.			

Register Definition 17 – REG_HSYNC1 Definition

REG_HSYNC0 Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x38		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: The value of these bits specify how many PCLK cycles for HSYNC0 during start of line.			

Register Definition 18 – REG_HSYNC0 Definition

REG_HSIZE Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x34		Reset Value: 0x1E0	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: These bits are used to specify the number of PCLK cycles per horizontal line.			

Register Definition 19 – REG_HSIZE Definition

REG_HOFFSET Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x30		Reset Value: 0x2B	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: These bits are used to specify the number of PCLK cycles before pixels are scanned out.			

Register Definition 20 – REG_HOFFSET Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_HCYCLE Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x2C		Reset Value: 0x224	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: These bits are the number of total PCLK cycles per horizontal line scan.			

Register Definition 21 – REG_HCYCLE Definition

3.2 Audio Engine Registers

REG_PLAY Definition		
31	1	0
reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x8C		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 1: Reserved bits		
Bit 0: A write to this bit triggers the play of the synthesized sound effect specified in **REG_SOUND**. Reading value 1 in this bit means the sound effect is playing. To stop the sound effect, the host needs to select the silence sound effect by setting up **REG_SOUND** and set this register to play.		

Register Definition 22 – REG_PLAY Definition

REG_SOUND Definition			
31	16	15	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x88		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved bits			
Bit 15 – 0: These bits are used to select the synthesized sound effect. They are split into two groups: Bit 15 – 8 and Bit 7 – 0. Bit 15 – 8: The MIDI note for the sound effect defined in Bits 0 – 7. Bit 7 – 0: These bits define the sound effect. Some of them are pitch adjustable and the pitch is defined in Bits 8 – 15. Some of them are not pitch adjustable and the Bits 8 – 15 will be ignored.			
Note: Please refer to the section "Sound Synthesizer" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.			

Register Definition 23 – REG_SOUND Definition

REG_VOL_SOUND Definition			
31	8	7	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x84		Reset Value: 0xFF	
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved bits			
Bit 7 – 0: These bits control the volume of the synthesizer sound. The default value 0xFF is highest volume. The value zero means mute.			

Register Definition 24 – REG_VOL_SOUND Definition

REG_VOL_PB Definition			
31	8	7	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x84		Reset Value: 0xFF	
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved bits			
Bit 7 – 0: These bits control the volume of the audio file playback. The default value 0xFF is highest volume. The value zero means mute.			

Register Definition 25 – REG_VOL_PB Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_PLAYBACK_PLAY Definition		
31	1	0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0xCC		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 1: Reserved bits		
Bit 0: A write to this bit triggers the start of audio playback, regardless of writing 0 or 1. It will read back 1 when playback is on-going, and 0 when playback completes.		
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.		

Register Definition 26 – REG_PLAYBACK_PLAY Definition

REG_PLAYBACK_LOOP Definition		
31	1	0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0xC8		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 1: Reserved bits		
Bit 0: this bit controls the audio engine to play back the audio data in **RAM_G** from the start address once it consumes all the data. A value of 1 means LOOP is enabled, a value of 0 means LOOP is disabled.		
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.		

Register Definition 27 – REG_PLAYBACK_LOOP Definition

REG_PLAYBACK_FORMAT Definition		
31	2	1 0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0xC4		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 2: Reserved bits		
Bit 1 – 0: These bits define the format of the audio data in **RAM_G**. 0b'00: Linear Sample format 0b'01: uLaw Sample format 0b'10: 4 bit IMA ADPCM Sample format 0b'11: Undefined.		
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.		

Register Definition 28 – REG_PLAYBACK_FORMAT Definition

REG_PLAYBACK_FREQ Definition		
31	16	15 0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0xC0		Reset Value: 0x1F40
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved bits		
Bit 15 – 0: These bits specify the sampling frequency of audio playback data. Unit is in Hz.		
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.		

Register Definition 29 – REG_PLAYBACK_FREQ Definition

REG_PLAYBACK_READPTR Definition		
31	20	19 0
reserved		r/w
Offset: 0xBC		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 20: Reserved bits		
Bit 19 – 0: These bits are updated by the audio engine while playing audio data from RAM_G. It is the current audio data address which is playing back. The host can read this register to check if the audio engine has consumed all the audio data.		
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.		

Register Definition 30 – REG_PLAYBACK_READPTR Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_PLAYBACK_LENGTH Definition	
31 20	19 0
reserved	r/w
Offset: 0xB8	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 20: Reserved bits	
Bit 19 – 0: These bits specify the length of audio data in **RAM_G** to playback, starting from the address specified in **REG_PLAYBACK_START** register.	
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.	

Register Definition 31 – REG_PLAYBACK_LENGTH Definition

REG_PLAYBACK_START Definition	
31 20	19 0
reserved	r/w
Offset: 0xB4	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 20: Reserved bits	
Bit 19 – 0: These bits specify the start address of audio data in **RAM_G** to playback.	
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.	

Register Definition 32 – REG_PLAYBACK_START Definition

REG_PLAYBACK_PAUSE Definition	
7 1	0
reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x5EC	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 7 – 1: Reserved bits	
Bit 0: Audio playback control bit. Writing 1 to pause the playback, writing 0 to start the playback.	
Note: Please refer to the section "Audio Playback" in BT81X datasheet for details of this register.	

Register Definition 33 – REG_PLAYBACK_PAUSE Definition

3.3 Flash Registers

REG_FLASH_STATUS Definition	
7 2	1 0
reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x5F0	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 7 – 2: Reserved bits	
Bit 1 – 0: These bits reflect the current status of attached flash. **0b'00**: FLASH_STATUS_INIT **0b'01**: FLASH_STATUS_DETACHED **0b'10:** FLASH_STATUS_BASIC **0b'11**: FLASH_STATUS_FULL	
Note: Please refer to the section "SPI NOR Flash Interface" in BT817/8 datasheet for details.	

Register Definition 34 – REG_FLASH_STATUS Definition

REG_FLASH_SIZE Definition	
31	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x7024	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: The value indicates the capacity of attached flash, in Mbytes.	
Note: Please refer to the section "SPI NOR Flash Interface" in BT817/8 datasheet for details	

Register Definition 35 – REG_FLASH_SIZE Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

3.4 Touch Screen Engine Registers

3.4.1 Overview

EVE supports screen touch functionality by either **R**esistive **T**ouch **E**ngine **(RTE)** or **C**apacitive **T**ouch **S**creen **E**ngine **(CTSE)**. BT815/BT817 has **CTSE** built-in while BT816/BT818 has **RTE** built-in.

3.4.2 Common Registers

This chapter describes the common registers which are effective to both RTE and CTSE.

Offset	Register Name	Description
0x150 – 0x164	REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A~F	Transform coefficient matrix coefficient
0x168	REG_TOUCH_CONFIG	Configuration register

Table 7 – Common Registers Summary

REG_TOUCH_CONFIG Definition									
31 16	15	14	13	12	11	10 4	3	2	1 0
reserved	r/o	r/w	rsvd	r/w	r/w	r/w	r/w	r/w	r/w
Offset: 0x168 Reset Value: 0x8381 (BT816/818) or 0x381(BT815/817)									
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved bits									
Bit 15: Working mode of touch engine. 0: capacitive 1: resistive									
Bit 14: 1: Enable the host mode. 0: Normal mode									
Bit 13: Reserved bit									
Bit 12: Ignore short-circuit protection. For resistive touch screen only.									
Bit 11: Enable low-power mode(for FocalTech only)									
Bit 10 – 4: I2C address of capacitive touch screen module: 0b'0111000 for FocalTech/Hycontek 0b'1011101 for Goodix									
Bit 3: Reserved.									
Bit 2: Suppress 300ms startup (for FocalTech only)									
Bit 1 – 0: Sampling clocks(for resistive touch screen only)									

Register Definition 36 – REG_TOUCH_CONFIG Definition

REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_F Definition		
31	30 16	15 0
r/w	r/w	r/w
Offset: 0x164		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 : The sign bit for fixed point number		
Bit 30 – 16: The value of these bits represents the integer part of the fixed point number.		
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits represents the fractional part of the fixed point number.		
Note: This register represents a fixed point number and the default value is +0.0 after reset.		

Register Definition 37 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_F Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_E Definition			
31	30 16	15	0
r/w	r/w	r/w	
Offset: 0x160		Reset Value: 0x10000	
Bit 31 : The sign bit for fixed point number			
Bit 30 – 16: The value of these bits represents the integer part of the fixed point number.			
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits represents the fractional part of the fixed point number.			
Note: This register represents a fixed point number and the default value is +1.0 after reset.			

Register Definition 38 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_E Definition

REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_D Definition			
31	30 16	15	0
r/w	r/w	r/w	
Offset: 0x15C		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 : The sign bit for fixed point number			
Bit 30 – 16: The value of these bits represents the integer part of the fixed point number.			
Bit 15 – 0 : The value of these bits represents the fractional part of the fixed point number.			
Note: This register represents a fixed point number and the default value is +0.0 after reset.			

Register Definition 39 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_D Definition

REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_C Definition			
31	30 16	15	0
r/w	r/w	r/w	
Offset: 0x158		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 : The sign bit for fixed point number			
Bit 30 – 16 : The value of these bits represents the integer part of the fixed point number.			
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits represents the fractional part of the fixed point number.			
Note: This register represents fixed point number and the default value is +0.0 after reset.			

Register Definition 40 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_C Definition

REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_B Definition			
31	30 16	15	0
r/w	r/w	r/w	
Offset: 0x154		Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31: The sign bit for fixed point number			
Bit 30 – 16: The value of these bits represents the integer part of the fixed point number.			
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits represents the fractional part of the fixed point number.			
Note: This register represents a fixed point number and the default value is +0.0 after reset.			

Register Definition 41 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_B Definition

REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A Definition			
31	30 16	15	0
r/w	r/w	r/w	
Offset: 0x150		Reset Value: 0x10000	
Bit 31 : The sign bit for fixed point number			
Bit 30 – 16: The value of these bits represents the integer part of the fixed point number.			
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits represents the fractional part of the fixed point number.			
Note: This register represents a fixed point number and the default value is +1.0 after reset.			

Register Definition 42 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

3.4.3 Resistive Touch Engine

All the registers available in **RTE** are identical to FT810.

Offset	Register Name	Description
0x104	REG_TOUCH_MODE	Touch screen sampling Mode
0x108	REG_TOUCH_ADC_MODE	Select ADC working mode
0x10C	REG_TOUCH_CHARGE	Touch screen charge time, unit of 6 clocks
0x110	REG_TOUCH_SETTLE	Touch screen settle time, unit of 6 clocks
0x114	REG_TOUCH_OVERSAMPLE	Touch screen oversample factor
0x118	REG_TOUCH_RZTHRESH	Touch screen resistance threshold
0x11C	REG_TOUCH_RAW_XY	Touch screen raw x,y(16,16)
0x120	REG_TOUCH_RZ	Touch screen resistance
0x124	REG_TOUCH_SCREEN_XY	Touch screen x,y(16,16)
0x128	REG_TOUCH_TAG_XY	coordinate used to calculate the tag of touch point
0x12C	REG_TOUCH_TAG	Touch screen Tag result

Table 8 – RTE Registers Summary

REG_TOUCH_TAG Definition	
31 8	7 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x12C	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits	
Bit v7 – 0: These bits are set as the tag value of the specific graphics object on the screen which is being touched. These bits are updated once when all the lines of the current frame are scanned out to the screen.	
Note: The valid tag value is from 1 to 255 and the default value of this register is zero, meaning there is no touch by default.	

Register Definition 43 – REG_TOUCH_TAG Definition

REG_TOUCH_TAG_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x128	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits are X coordinates of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits are the Y coordinates of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Note: Host can read this register to check the coordinates used by the touch engine to update the tag register **REG_TOUCH_TAG**.	

Register Definition 44 – REG_TOUCH_TAG_XY Definition

REG_TOUCH_SCREEN _XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x124	Reset Value: 0x80008000
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is the X coordinates of the touch screen. After doing calibration, it shall be within the width of the screen size. If the touch screen is not being touched, it shall be 0x8000.	
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits is the Y coordinates of the touch screen. After doing calibration, it shall be within the width of the screen size. If the touch screen is not being touched, it shall be 0x8000.	

Register Definition 45 – REG_TOUCH_SCREEN_XY Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_Z1Z2 Definition			
31 26	25 16	15 10	9 0
reserved	r/o	reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x190			Reset Value: NA
Bit 31 – 26 : Reserved Bits			
Bit 25 – 16 : 10 bit **ADC** value for touch screen resistance Z1			
Bit 15 – 10 : Reserved Bits			
Bit 9 – 0 : 10 bit **ADC** value for touch screen resistance Z2			
Note: To know it is touched or not, please check the 31st bit of **REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_XY**. Touch engine will do the post-processing for these **Z1** and **Z2** values and update the result in **REG_TOUCH_RZ**.			

Register Definition 46 – REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_Z1Z2 Definition

REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_XY Definition				
31	30 26	25 16	15 10	9 0
r/o	reserved	r/o	reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x18C				Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31: If this bit is zero, it means a touch is being sensed and the two fields above contain the sensed data. If this bit is one, it means no touch is being sensed and the data in the two fields above shall be ignored.				
Bit 30 – 26 : Reserved Bits				
Bit 25 – 16 : 10 bit **ADC** value for touch screen resistance **Z1**				
Bit 15 – 10 : Reserved Bits				
Bit 9 – 0 : 10 bit **ADC** value for touch screen resistance **Z2**				

Register Definition 47 – REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_XY

REG_TOUCH_RZ Definition	
31 16	15 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x120	Reset Value: 0x7FFF
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved Bits	
Bit 15 – 0: These bits measures the touching pressure on the touch screen. The valid value is from 0 to 0x7FFF. The highest value(0x7FFF) means no touch and the lowest value (0) means the maximum touching pressure.	

Register Definition 48 – REG_TOUCH_RZ Definition

REG_TOUCH_RAW _XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x11C	Reset Value: 0xFFFFFFFF
Bit 31 – 16: These bits are the raw X coordinates before going through calibration process. The valid range is from 0 to 1023. If there is no touch on screen, the value shall be 0xFFFF.	
Bit 15 – 0: These bits are the raw Y coordinates of the touch screen before going through calibration process. The valid range is from 0 to 1023. If there is no touch on screen, the value shall be 0xFFFF.	
Note: The coordinates in this register have not mapped into the screen coordinates. To get the screen coordinates, please refer to **REG_TOUCH_SCREEN_XY**.	

Register Definition 49 – REG_TOUCH_RAW_XY Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_TOUCH_RZTHRESH Definition	
31 16	15 0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x118	Reset Value: 0xFFFF
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved Bits.	
Bit 15 - 0: These bits control the touch screen resistance threshold. The host can adjust the touch screen touching sensitivity by setting this register. The default value after reset is 0xFFFF and it means the lightest touch will be accepted by the RTE. The host can set this register by doing experiments. The typical value is 1200.	

Register Definition 50 – REG_TOUCH_RZTHRESH Definition

REG_TOUCH_OVERSAMPLE Definition	
31 4	3 0
reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x114	Reset Value: 0x7
Bit 31 – 4: Reserved Bits.	
Bit 3 – 0: These bits control the touch screen oversample factor. The higher value of this register causes more accuracy with more power consumption, but may not be necessary. The valid range is from 1 to 15.	

Register Definition 51 – REG_TOUCH_OVERSAMPLE Definition

REG_TOUCH_SETTLE Definition	
31 4	3 0
reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x110	Reset Value: 0x3
Bit 31 – 4: Reserved Bits.	
Bit 3 – 0: These bits control the touch screen settle time, in the unit of 6 clocks. The default value is 3, meaning the settle time is 18 (3*6) system clock cycles.	

Register Definition 52 – REG_TOUCH_SETTLE Definition

REG_TOUCH_CHARGE Definition	
31 16	15 0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x10C	Reset Value: 0x1770
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved Bits.	
Bit 15 – 0: These bits control the touch screen charge time, in the unit of 6 clocks. The default value is 6000, meaning the charge time is (6000*6) system clock cycles.	

Register Definition 53 – REG_TOUCH_CHARGE Definition

REG_TOUCH_ADC_MODE Definition	
31 2	1 0
reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x108	Reset Value: 0x1
Bit 31 – 1 : Reserved bits	
Bit 0: The host can set this bit to control the ADC sampling mode, as per: 0: Single Ended mode. It causes lower power consumption but with less accuracy. 1: Differential Mode. It causes higher power consumption but with more accuracy.	

Register Definition 54 – REG_TOUCH_ADC_MODE Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_TOUCH_MODE Definition		
31	2	1 0
reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x104		Reset Value: 0x3
Bit 31 – 2: Reserved bits		
Bit 1 – 0: The host can set these two bits to control the touch screen sampling mode of touch engine, as per: 0b'00: Off mode. No sampling happens. RTE stops working. 0b'01: Single mode. Cause one single sample to occur. 0b'10: Frame mode. Cause a sample at the start of each frame. 0b'11: Continuous mode. Up to 1000 times per seconds. Default mode after reset.		

Register Definition 55 – REG_TOUCH_MODE Definition

3.4.4 Capacitive Touch Engine

Capacitive **T**ouch **S**creen **E**ngine (**CTSE**) has the following features:

- I^2C interface to **C**apacitive **T**ouch **P**anel **M**odule **(CTPM)**
- Detects up to 5 touch points at the same time
- Supports CTPM with Focaltech and Goodix touch controller.
- Supports touch host mode. Please refer to the datasheet for details.
- Compatibility mode for single touching point and extended mode for multi-touching points.

After reset or boot up, **CTSE** works in compatibility mode and only one touch point is detected. In extended mode, it can detect up to **five** touch points simultaneously.

CTSE makes use of the same registers set **REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A~F** to transform the raw coordinates to a calibrated screen coordinate, regardless of whether it is in compatibility mode or extended mode.

Note: The calibration process of the touch screen should only be performed in compatibility mode.

Offset	Register Name	Description
0x104	**REG_CTOUCH_MODE**	Touch screen sampling Mode
0x108	**REG_CTOUCH_EXTENDED**	Select ADC working mode
0x11C	**REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH1_XY**	Coordinate of second touch point
0x120	**REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_Y**	Y coordinate of fifth touch point
0x124	**REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH_XY**	Coordinate of first touch point
0x128	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG_XY**	coordinate used to calculate the tag of first touch point
0x12C	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG**	Touch screen Tag result of fist touch point
0x130	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG1_XY**	XY used to tag of second touch point
0x134	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG1**	Tag result of second touch point
0x138	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG2_XY**	XY used to tag of third touch point
0x13C	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG2**	Tag result of third touch point
0x140	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG3_XY**	XY used to tag of fourth touch point
0x144	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG3**	Tag result of fourth touch point
0x148	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG4_XY**	XY used to tag of fifth touch point
0x14C	**REG_CTOUCH_TAG4**	Tag result of fifth touch point
0x16C	**REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_X**	X coordinate of fifth touch point
0x18C	**REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH2_XY**	Third touch point coordinate
0x190	**REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH3_XY**	Fourth touch point coordinate

Table 9 – CTSE Registers Summary

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

The following tables define the registers provided by **CTSE**:

REG_CTOUCH_MODE Definition		
31	2	1 0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x104		Reset Value: 0x3
Bit 31 – 2 : Reserved bits		
Bit 1 – 0: The host can set these two bits to control the touch screen sampling mode of the touch engine, as per: 0b'00: Off mode. No sampling happens. **CTSE** stops working. 0b'01: Not defined. 0b'10: Not defined. 0b'11: On mode.		

Register Definition 56 – REG_CTOUCH_MODE Definition

REG_CTOUCH_EXTEND Definition		
31	1	0
reserved		r/w
Offset: 0x108		Reset Value: 0x1
Bit 31 – 1 : Reserved bits		
Bit 0: This bit controls the detection mode of the touch engine, as per: 0: Extended mode, multi-touch detection mode 1: Compatibility mode, single touch detection mode		

Register Definition 57 – REG_CTOUCH_EXTENDED Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH_XY Definition			
31	16	15	0
r/o		r/o	
Offset: 0x124			Reset Value: 0x80008000
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the first touch point			
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the first touch point.			
Note: This register is applicable for extended mode and compatibility mode. For compatibility mode, it reflects the position of the only touch point			

Register Definition 58 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH1_XY Definition			
31	16	15	0
r/o		r/o	
Offset: 0x11C			Reset Value: 0x80008000
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the second touch point			
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the second touch point.			
Note: This register is only applicable in the extended mode			

Register Definition 59 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH1_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH2_XY Definition			
31	16	15	0
r/o		r/o	
Offset: 0x18C			Reset Value: 0x80008000
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinates of the third touch point			
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinates of the third touch point.			
Note: This register is only applicable in the extended mode			

Register Definition 60 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH2_XY Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH3_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x190	Reset Value: 0x80008000
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the fourth touch point	
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the fourth touch point.	
Note: This register is only applicable in the extended mode	

Register Definition 61 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH3_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_X Definition	
15	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x16C	Reset Value: 0x8000
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the fifth touch point.	
Note: This register is only applicable in the extended mode. It is a 16 bit register.	

Register Definition 62 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_X Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_Y Definition	
15	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x120	Reset Value: 0x8000
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the fifth touch point.	
Note: This register is only applicable in the extended mode. It is a 16 bit register.	

Register Definition 63 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_Y Definition

REG_CTOUCH_RAW_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x11C	Reset Value: 0xFFFFFFFF
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is the X coordinate of a touch point before going through calibration process	
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is the Y coordinate of a touch point before going through calibration process	
Note: This register is only applicable in the compatibility mode	

Register Definition 64 – REG_CTOUCH_RAW_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG Definition	
31 8	7 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x12C	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits	
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set as the tag value of the specific graphics object on the screen which is being touched. These bits are updated once when all the lines of the current frame are scanned out to the screen. It works in both extended mode and compatibility mode. In extended mode, it is the tag of the **first** touch point , i.e., the tag value mapping to the coordinate in **REG_CTOUCH_TAG_XY**	
Note: The valid tag value range is from 1 to 255, therefore the default value of this register is zero, meaning there is no touch by default. In extended mode, it refers to the first touch point	

Register Definition 65 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_CTOUCH_TAG1 Definition	
31 8	7 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x134	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits	
Bit 7 - 0: These bits are set as the tag value of the specific graphics object on the screen which is being touched. It is the **second** touch point in extended mode. These bits are updated once when all the lines of the current frame are scanned out to the screen.	
Note: The valid tag value range is from 1 to 255, therefore the default value of this register is zero, meaning there is no touch by default. This register is only applicable in the extended mode.	

Register Definition 66 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG1 Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG2 Definition	
31 8	7 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x13C	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits	
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set as the tag value of the specific graphics object on the screen which is being touched. It is the **third** touch point in extended mode. These bits are updated once when all the lines of the current frame are scanned out to the screen.	
Note: The valid tag value range is from 1 to 255, therefore the default value of this register is zero, meaning there is no touch by default. This register is only applicable in the extended mode.	

Register Definition 67 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG2 Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG3 Definition	
31 8	7 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x144	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits	
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set as the tag value of the specific graphics object on the screen which is being touched. It is the **fourth** touch point in extended mode. These bits are updated once when all the lines of the current frame are scanned out to the screen.	
Note: The valid tag value range is from 1 to 255, therefore the default value of this register is zero, meaning there is no touch by default. This register is only applicable in the extended mode.	

Register Definition 68 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG3 Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG4 Definition	
31 8	7 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x14C	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits	
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set as the tag value of the specific graphics object on the screen which is being touched. It is the **fifth** touch point in extended mode. These bits are updated once when all the lines of the current frame are scanned out to the screen.	
Note: The valid tag value range is from 1 to 255, therefore the default value of this register is zero, meaning there is no touch by default. This register is only applicable in the extended mode.	

Register Definition 69 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG4 Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_CTOUCH_TAG_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x128	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the touch screen, used by the touch engine to look up the tag result.	
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the touch screen, used by the touch engine to look up the tag result.	
Note: The Host can read this register to check the coordinates used by the touch engine to update the tag register REG_CTOUCH_TAG.	

Register Definition 70 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG1_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x130	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Bit 15 – 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Note: The Host can read this register to check the coordinates used by the touch engine to update the tag register REG_CTOUCH_TAG1.	

Register Definition 71 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG1_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG2_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x138	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Note: The Host can read this register to check the coordinates used by the touch engine to update the tag register REG_CTOUCH_TAG2.	

Register Definition 72 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG2_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG3_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x140	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Note: The Host can read this register to check the coordinates used by the touch engine to update the tag register REG_CTOUCH_TAG3.	

Register Definition 73 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG3_XY Definition

REG_CTOUCH_TAG4_XY Definition	
31 16	15 0
r/o	r/o
Offset: 0x148	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: The value of these bits is X coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Bit 15 - 0: The value of these bits is Y coordinate of the touch screen to look up the tag result.	
Note: The Host can read this register to check the coordinates used by the touch engine to update the tag register REG_CTOUCH_TAG4.	

Register Definition 74 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG4_XY Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

3.4.5 Calibration

The calibration process is initiated by **CMD_CALIBRATE** and works with both the **RTE** and **CTSE**, but is only available in the compatibility mode of the **CTSE**. However, the results of the calibration process are applicable to both compatibility mode and extended mode. As such, users are recommended to finish the calibration process before entering into extended mode.

After the calibration process is complete, the registers **REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A-F** will be updated accordingly.

3.5 Coprocessor Engine Registers

REG_CMD_DL Definition	
31 13	12 0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x100	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 13: Reserved Bits	
Bit 12 – 0: These bits indicate the offset from **RAM_DL** of the display list commands generated by the coprocessor engine. The coprocessor engine depends on these bits to determine the address in the display list buffer of generated display list commands. It will update this register as long as the display list commands are generated into the display list buffer. By setting this register properly, the host can specify the starting address in the display list buffer for the coprocessor engine to generate display commands. The valid value range is from 0 to 8191 (sizeof(**RAM_DL**)-1).	

Register Definition 75 – REG_CMD_DL Definition

REG_CMD_WRITE Definition	
31 12	11 0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0xFC	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits	
Bit 11 – 0: These bits are updated by the **MCU** to inform the coprocessor engine of the ending address of valid data feeding into its **FIFO**. Typically, the host will update this register after it has downloaded the coprocessor commands into its FIFO. The valid range is from 0 to 4095, i.e. within the size of the **FIFO**.	
Note: The **FIFO** size of the command buffer is 4096 bytes and each coprocessor instruction is of 4 bytes in size. The value to be written into this register must be 4 bytes aligned.	

Register Definition 76 – REG_CMD_WRITE Definition

REG_CMD_READ Definition	
31 12	11 0
Reserved	r/o
Offset: 0xF8	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits	
Bit 11 – 0: These bits are updated by the coprocessor engine as long as the coprocessor engine fetched the command from its FIFO. The host can read this register to determine the FIFO fullness of the coprocessor engine. The valid value range is from 0 to 4095. In the case of an error, the coprocessor engine writes 0xFFF to this register.	
Note: The host shall not write into this register unless in an error recovery case. The default value is zero after the coprocessor engine is reset.	

Register Definition 77 – REG_CMD_READ Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_CMDB_SPACE Definition			
31	12	11	0
Reserved		r/o	
Offset: 0x574			Reset Value: 0xFFC
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved Bits			
Bit 11 – 0: These bits are updated by the coprocessor engine to indicate the free space in RAM_CMD. The host can read this register to determine how many bytes are available to be written into **RAM_CMD** before writing to **RAM_CMD**.			
Note: The host shall not write into this register unless in an error recovery case. The default value is zero after the coprocessor engine is reset.			

Register Definition 78 – REG_CMDB_SPACE Definition

REG_CMDB_WRITE Definition	
31	0
w/o	
Offset: 0x578	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: The data or command to be written into **RAM_CMD**. The Host can issue one write transfer with this register address to transfer data less than or equal to the amount of **REG_CMDB_SPACE** to make bulky data transfer possible.	
Note: This register helps programmers write to the coprocessor **FIFO(RAM_CMD).** It was introduced from the FT810 series chip. Always write this register with 4 bytes aligned data.	

Register Definition 79 – REG_CMDB_WRITE Definition

3.6 Miscellaneous Registers

In this chapter, the miscellaneous registers covers backlight control, interrupt, GPIO, and other functionality registers.

REG_CPURESET Definition				
31	3	2	1	0
reserved		r/w		
Offset: 0x20				Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 3: Reserved Bits				
Bit 2: Control the reset of audio engine.				
Bit 1: Control the reset of touch engine.				
Bit 0: Control the reset of coprocessor engine.				
Note: Write 1 to reset the corresponding engine. Write 0 to go back to normal working status. Reading 1 means the engine is in reset status, and reading zero means the engine is in working status.				

Register Definition 80 – REG_CPURESET Definition

REG_MACRO_1 Definition	
31	0
r/w	
Offset: 0xDC	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: Display list command macro 1. The value of this register will be copied over to **RAM_DL** to replace the display list command **MACRO** if its parameter is 1.	

Register Definition 81 – REG_MACRO_1 Definition

REG_MACRO_0 Definition	
31	0
r/w	
Offset: 0xD8	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: Display list command macro 0. The value of this register will be copied over to **RAM_DL** to replace the display list command **MACRO** if its parameter is 0.	

Register Definition 82 – REG_MACRO_0 Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_PWM_DUTY Definition			
31	8	7	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0xD4			Reset Value: 0x80
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits			
Bit 7 – 0: These bits define the backlight PWM output duty cycle. The valid range is from 0 to 128. 0 means backlight completely off, 128 means backlight in max brightness.			

Register Definition 83 – REG_PWM_DUTY Definition

REG_PWM_HZ Definition			
31	14	13	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0xD0			Reset Value: 0xFA
Bit 31 – 14: Reserved Bits			
Bit 13 – 0: These bits define the backlight PWM output frequency in **HZ**. The default is 250 Hz after reset. The valid frequency is from 250Hz to 10000Hz.			

Register Definition 84 – REG_PWM_HZ Definition

REG_INT_MASK Definition			
31	8	7	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0xB0			Reset Value: 0xFF
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits			
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are used to mask the corresponding interrupt. 1 means to enable the corresponding interrupt source, 0 means to disable the corresponding interrupt source. After reset, all the interrupt source are eligible to trigger an interrupt by default.			
Note: Refer to the section "Interrupts" in BT817/8 datasheet for more details.			

Register Definition 85 – REG_INT_MASK Definition

REG_INT_EN Definition		
31	1	0
Reserved		r/w
Offset: 0xAC		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 1: Reserved bits		
Bit 0: The host can set this bit to 1 to enable the global interrupt. To disable the global interrupt, the host can set this bit to 0.		
Note: Refer to the section "Interrupts" in BT817/8 datasheet for more details.		

Register Definition 86 – REG_INT_EN Definition

REG_INT_FLAGS Definition			
31	8	7	0
Reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0xA8			Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits			
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are interrupt flags. The host can read these bits to determine which interrupt takes place. These bits are cleared automatically by reading. The host shall not write to this register.			
Note: Refer to the section "Interrupts" in BT817/8 datasheet for more details.			

Register Definition 87 – REG_INT_FLAGS Definition

REG_GPIO_DIR Definition					
31	8	7	6	2	1	0
Reserved		r/w	reserved		r/w	
Offset: 0x90					Reset Value: 0x0	
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits						
Bit 7: It controls the direction of pin **DISP**.						
Bit 6 – 2: Reserved Bits						

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Bit 1: It controls the direction of **GPIO1**.
Bit 0: It controls the direction of **GPIO0**.
Note: 1 is for output, 0 is for input direction. This register is a legacy register for backward compatibility only

Register Definition 88 – REG_GPIO_DIR Definition

REG_GPIO Definition								
31 8	7	6 5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved	r/w						
Offset: 0x94							Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits							
Bit 7 : It controls the high or low level of pin **DISP**.							
Bit 6-5: Drive strength settings for pins **GPIO0,GPIO1, CTP_RST_N:** 0b'00:5mA – default, 0b'01:10mA, 0b'10:15mA, 0b'11:20mA							
Bit 4: Drive strength settings for pins **PCLK, DISP,VSYNC,HSYNC,DE, R,G,B, BACKLIGHT:** 0b'0: 1.2mA – default, 0b'1: 2.4mA							
Bit 3-2: Drive Strength Setting for pins **MISO, MOSI, INT_N:** 0b'00:5mA – default, 0b'01:10mA, 0b'10:15mA, 0b'11:20mA							
Bit 1: It controls the high or low level of pin **GPIO1**.							
Bit 0: It controls the high or low level of pin **GPIO0**.							
Note: Refer to BT817/8 datasheet. This register is a legacy register for backward compatibility only.							

Register Definition 89 – REG_GPIO Definition

REG_GPIOX_DIR Definition			
31 16	15	14 4	3 0
Reserved	r/w	reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x98			Reset Value: 0x8000
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved Bits			
Bit 15: It controls the direction of pin **DISP**. The default value is 1, meaning output.			
Bit 14 – 4: Reserved Bits			
Bit 3: It controls the direction of **GPIO3**.			
Bit 2: It controls the direction of **GPIO2**.			
Bit 1: It controls the direction of **GPIO1**.			
Bit 0: It controls the direction of **GPIO0**.			
Note: 1 is for output,0 is for input direction			

Register Definition 90 – REG_GPIOX_DIR Definition

REG_GPIOX Definition								
31 16	15	14 13	12	11 10	9	8 4	3 0
Reserved	r/w					reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x9C							Reset Value: 0x8000
Bit 31 – 16: Reserved Bits							
Bit 15: It controls the high or low level of pin **DISP**. 1 for high level (default) and 0 for low level.							
Bit 14-13: Drive strength settings for pins **GPIO0,GPIO1,GPIO2,GPIO3, CTP_RST_N:** 0b'00:5mA – default, 0b'01:10mA, 0b'10:15mA, 0b'11:20mA							
Bit 12: Drive strength settings for pins **PCLK, DISP,VSYNC,HSYNC,DE, R,G,B, BACKLIGHT:** 0b'0: 1.2mA – default, 0b'1: 2.4mA							
Bit 11-10: Drive Strength Setting for pins **MISO, MOSI, INT_N,IO2, IO3, SPIM_SCLK,**							

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

SPIM_SS_N, SPIM_MOSI, SPIM_MISO, SPIM_IO2, SPIM_IO3: 0b'00:5mA – default, 0b'01:10mA, 0b'10:15mA, 0b'11:20mA
Bit 9: It controls the type of pin **INT_N**. 0b'0: Open Drain – default, 0b'1: Push-pull
Bit 8 – 4: Reserved Bits
Bit 3: It controls the high or low level of pin **GPIO3**.
Bit 2: It controls the high or low level of pin **GPIO2.**
Bit 1: It controls the high or low level of pin **GPIO1**.
Bit 0: It controls the high or low level of pin **GPIO0**.
Note: Refer to BT817/8 datasheet for more details.

Register Definition 91 – REG_GPIOX Definition

REG_FREQUENCY Definition	
31	0
r/w	
Offset: 0xC	Reset Value: 0x3938700
Bit 31 – 0: The main clock frequency is 60MHz by default. The value is in Hz. If the host selects the alternative frequency, this register must be updated accordingly.	

Register Definition 92 – REG_FREQUENCY Definition

REG_CLOCK Definition	
31	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x8	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: These bits are set to zero after reset. The register counts the number of main clock cycles since reset. If the main clock's frequency is 60Mhz, it will wrap around after about 71 seconds.	

Register Definition 93 – REG_CLOCK Definition

REG_FRAMES Definition	
31	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x4	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: These bits are set to zero after reset. The register counts the number of screen frames. If the refresh rate is 60Hz, it will wrap up till about 828 days after reset.	

Register Definition 94 – REG_FRAMES Definition

REG_ID Definition		
31	8	7 0
Reserved		r/o
Offset: 0x0		Reset Value: 0x7C
Bit 31 – 8: Reserved Bits		
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are the built-in ID of the chip. The value shall always be **0x7C**. The host can read this to determine if the chip belongs to the **EVE** series and is in working mode after booting up.		

Register Definition 95 – REG_ID Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_SPI_WIDTH Definition			
31 … 3	2	1	0
Reserved	r/w		
Offset: 0x188	Reset Value: 0x0		
Bit 31 – 3: Reserved Bits			
Bit 2: Extra dummy on SPI read transfer. Writing 1 to enable one extra dummy byte on SPI read transfer.			
Bit 1 – 0: SPI data bus width: 0b'00: 1 bit – default 0b'01: 2 bit (Dual-SPI) 0b'10: 4 bit (Quad-SPI) 0b'11: undefined			
Note: Refer to BT81Xdatasheet for more details.			

Register Definition 96 – REG_SPI_WIDTH Definition

REG_ADAPTIVE_FRAMERATE Definition	
7 … 1	0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x57C	Reset Value: 0x1
Bit 7 – 1: Reserved bits	
Bit 0: Reduce the framerate during complex drawing. 0: Disable 1: Enable	
Note: Please check if the LCD panel datasheet supports the variable frame rate.	

Register Definition 97 – REG_ADAPTIVE_FRAMERATE Definition

REG_UNDERRUN Definition	
31 … 0	
r/o	
Offset: 0x60C	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: It counts underrun lines. When a line underruns, it is incremented. An application can sample it on each frame swap to determine if the previous frame suffered an underrun.	
Note: **BT817/8** specific register.	

Register Definition 98 – REG_UNDERRUN Definition

REG_AH_HCYCLE_MAX Definition	
31 … 12	11 … 0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x610	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 11 – 0: The maximum PCLK count of horizontal line when adaptive HSYNC is enabled. Value 0 means adaptive HSYNC feature is disabled. The valid value shall be greater than **REG_HCYCLE.**	
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved bits	
Note: **BT817/8** specific register.	

Register Definition 99 – REG_AH_HCYCLE_MAX Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_PCLK_FREQ Definition		
31 12	11 10	9 0
Reserved	r/w	r/w
Offset: 0x614		Reset Value: 0x8A1
Bit 31 – 12: Reserved bits		
Bit 11 – 10: Configure the range of output fractional **PCLK** frequency for **EXTSYNC** mode. Refer to BT817/8 datasheet for details.		
Bit 9 - 0: Configure the output fractional **PCLK** frequency for **EXTSYNC** mode, i.e., **REG_PCLK** is set to 1. Refer to BT817/8 datasheet for details.		
Note: **BT817/8** specific register. It is recommended to refer to the table *RGB PCLK Frequency in EXTSYNC mode* in the **Parallel RGB Interface** section of the BT817/8 datasheet which has recommended values. Coprocessor command **CMD_PCLKFREQ** can be used to set the register. See the section **CMD_PCLKFREQ** for information on this command.		

Register Definition 100 – REG_PCLK_FREQ Definition

REG_PCLK_2X Definition	
7 1	0
Reserved	r/w
Offset: 0x618	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 0: graphics engine outputs 1 or 2 pixels per **PCLK**. 0 means 1 pixel per clock, 1 means 2 pixel per clock.	
Bit 7 – 1: Reserved bits.	
Note: **BT817/8** specific register. When graphics engine outputs 2 pixels per **PCLK**, the values loaded in the following registers must be even: • REG_HSIZE • REG_HOFFSET • REG_HCYCLE • REG_HSYNC0 • REG_HSYNC1	

Register Definition 101 – REG_PCLK_2X Definition

3.7 Special Registers

The registers listed here are not located in **RAM_REG**. They are located in special addresses.

REG_TRACKER Definition		
31 16	15 8	7 0
r/o	reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x7000		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: These bits are set to indicate the tracking value for the tracked graphics objects. The coprocessor calculates the tracking value that the touching point takes within the predefined range. Please check the **CMD_TRACK** for more details.		
Bit 15 – 8: Reserved Bits		
Bit 7 - 0: These bits are set to indicate the tag value of a graphics object which is being touched.		

Register Definition 102 – REG_TRACKER Definition

REG_TRACKER_1 Definition		
31 16	15 8	7 0
r/o	reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x7004		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: These bits are set to indicate the tracking value for the tracked graphics objects. The coprocessor calculates the tracking value that the touching point takes within the predefined range. Please check the **CMD_TRACK** for more details.		

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Bit 15 – 8: Reserved Bits
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set to indicate the tag value of a graphics object which is being touched as the second point.
Note: It is only applicable for extended mode of CTSE.

Register Definition 103 – REG_TRACKER_1 Definition

REG_TRACKER_2 Definition		
31 16	15 8	7 0
r/o	reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x7008		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: These bits are set to indicate the tracking value for the tracked graphics objects. The coprocessor calculates the tracking value that the touching point takes within the predefined range. Please check the **CMD_TRACK** for more details.		
Bit 15 – 8: Reserved Bits		
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set to indicate the tag value of a graphics object which is being touched as the third point.		
Note: It is only applicable for extended mode of CTSE.		

Register Definition 104 – REG_TRACKER_2 Definition

REG_TRACKER_3 Definition		
31 16	15 8	7 0
r/o	reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x700C		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: These bits are set to indicate the tracking value for the tracked graphics objects. The coprocessor calculates the tracking value that the touching point takes within the predefined range. Please check the **CMD_TRACK** for more details.		
Bit 15 – 8: Reserved Bits		
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set to indicate the tag value of a graphics object which is being touched as the fourth point.		
Note: It is only applicable for extended mode of CTSE.		

Register Definition 105 – REG_TRACKER_3 Definition

REG_TRACKER_4 Definition		
31 16	15 8	7 0
r/o	reserved	r/o
Offset: 0x7010		Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 16: These bits are set to indicate the tracking value for the tracked graphics objects. The coprocessor calculates the tracking value that the touching point takes within the predefined range. Please check the **CMD_TRACK** for more details.		
Bit 15 – 8: Reserved Bits		
Bit 7 – 0: These bits are set to indicate the tag value of a graphics object which is being touched as the fifth point.		
Note: It is only applicable for extended mode of CTSE.		

Register Definition 106 – REG_TRACKER_4 Definition

REG_MEDIAFIFO_READ Definition	
31	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x7014	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: The value specifies the read pointer pointing to the address in **RAM_G** as the media **FIFO**.	

Register Definition 107 – REG_MEDIAFIFO_READ Definition

REG_MEDIAFIFO_WRITE Definition	
31	0
w/o	

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Offset: 0x7018	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: The value specifies the write pointer pointing to the address in **RAM_G** as the media **FIFO**.	

Register Definition 108 – REG_MEDIAFIFO_WRITE Definition

REG_PLAY_CONTROL Definition	
7	0
w/o	
Offset: 0x714E	Reset Value: 0x1
Bit 7 – 0: video playback control. The following values are defined: 0: pause playback 1: play normally 0xFF: exit playback	

Register Definition 109 – REG_PLAY_CONTROL Definition

REG_ANIM_ACTIVE Definition	
31	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x702C	Reset Value: 0x0
Bit 31 – 0: 32-bit mask of currently playing animations. Each bit indicates the active state of animation channel. 0 means animation ends and 1 means animation runs.	
Note: Only applicable for the animation channel is played with **ANIM_ONCE** flag.	

Register Definition 110 – REG_ANIM_ACTIVE Definition

REG_COPRO_PATCH_PTR Definition	
15	0
r/o	
Offset: 0x7162	Reset Value: **NA**
Bit 15 – 0: The address of coprocessor patch pointer.	
Note: This register shall be only used for the coprocessor recovery purpose. Refer to Coprocessor Faults.	

Register Definition 111 – REG_COPRO_PATCH_PTR Definition

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4 Display List Commands

The graphics engine takes the instructions from display list memory **RAM_DL** in the form of commands. Each command is 4 bytes long and one display list can be filled with up to 2048 commands as the size of **RAM_DL** is 8K bytes. The graphics engine performs the respective operation according to the definition of commands.

4.1 Graphics State

The graphics state which controls the effects of a drawing action is stored in the graphics context. Individual pieces of state can be changed by the appropriate display list commands and the entire current state can be saved and restored using the **SAVE_CONTEXT** and **RESTORE_CONTEXT** commands.

Note that the bitmap drawing state is special: Although the bitmap handle is part of the graphics context, the parameters for each bitmap handle are not part of the graphics context. They are neither saved nor restored by **SAVE_CONTEXT** and **RESTORE_CONTEXT**. These parameters are changed using the **BITMAP_SOURCE**, **BITMAP_LAYOUT/BITMAP_LAYOUT_H** and **BITMAP_SIZE/BITMAP_SIZE_H** commands. Once these parameters are set up, they can be utilized at any display list by referencing the same bitmap handle until they were changed.

SAVE_CONTEXT and **RESTORE_CONTEXT** are comprised of a 4-level stack in addition to the current graphics context. The table below details the various parameters in the graphics context.

Parameters	Default values	Commands
func & ref	ALWAYS, 0	ALPHA_FUNC
func & ref	ALWAYS, 0	STENCIL_FUNC
Src & dst	SRC_ALPHA, ONE_MINUS_SRC_ALPHA	BLEND_FUNC
Cell value	0	CELL
Alpha value	0	COLOR_A
Red, Blue, Green colors	(255,255,255)	COLOR_RGB
Line width in 1/16 pixels	16	LINE_WIDTH
Point size in 1/16 pixels	16	POINT_SIZE
Width & height of scissor	HSIZE,2048	SCISSOR_SIZE
Starting coordinates of scissor	(x, y) = (0,0)	SCISSOR_XY
Current bitmap handle	0	BITMAP_HANDLE
Bitmap transform coefficients	+1.0,0,0,0,+1.0,0	BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F
Stencil clear value	0	CLEAR_STENCIL
Tag clear value	0	CLEAR_TAG
Mask value of stencil	255	STENCIL_MASK
spass and sfail	KEEP,KEEP	STENCIL_OP
Tag buffer value	255	TAG
Tag mask value	1	TAG_MASK
Alpha clear value	0	CLEAR_COLOR_A
RGB clear color	(0,0,0)	CLEAR_COLOR_RGB
Palette source address	RAM_G	PALETTE_SOURCE
Units of pixel precision	1/16 pixel	VERTEX_FORMAT, VERTEX2F

Table 10 – Graphics Context

4.2 Command Encoding

Each display list command has a 32-bit encoding. The most significant bits of the code determine the command. Command parameters (if any) are present in the least significant bits. Any bits marked as "reserved" must be zero.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.3 Command Groups

4.3.1 Setting Graphics State

ALPHA_FUNC	set the alpha test function
BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT	specify the extended format of the bitmap
BITMAP_HANDLE	set the bitmap handle
BITMAP_LAYOUT/ BITMAP_LAYOUT_H	set the source bitmap memory format and layout for the current handle
BITMAP_SIZE/ BITMAP_SIZE_H	set the screen drawing of bitmaps for the current handle
BITMAP_SOURCE	set the source address for bitmap graphics. It can be a flash address.
BITMAP_SWIZZLE	specify the color channel swizzle for a bitmap
BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F	set the components of the bitmap transform matrix
BLEND_FUNC	set pixel arithmetic function
CELL	set the bitmap cell number for the VERTEX2F command
CLEAR	clear buffers to preset values
CLEAR_COLOR_A	set clear value for the alpha channel
CLEAR_COLOR_RGB	set clear values for red, green and blue channels
CLEAR_STENCIL	set clear value for the stencil buffer
CLEAR_TAG	set clear value for the tag buffer
COLOR_A	set the current color alpha
COLOR_MASK	enable or disable writing of color components
COLOR_RGB	set the current color red, green and blue
LINE_WIDTH	set the line width
POINT_SIZE	set point size
RESTORE_CONTEXT	restore the current graphics context from the context stack
SAVE_CONTEXT	push the current graphics context on the context stack
SCISSOR_SIZE	set the size of the scissor clip rectangle
SCISSOR_XY	set the top left corner of the scissor clip rectangle
STENCIL_FUNC	set function and reference value for stencil testing
STENCIL_MASK	control the writing of individual bits in the stencil planes
STENCIL_OP	set stencil test actions
TAG	set the current tag value
TAG_MASK	control the writing of the tag buffer
VERTEX_FORMAT	set the precision of VERTEX2F coordinates
VERTEX_TRANSLATE_X	specify the vertex transformation's X translation component
VERTEX_TRANSLATE_Y	specify the vertex transformation's Y translation component
PALETTE_SOURCE	Specify the base address of the palette

4.3.2 Drawing Actions

BEGIN	start drawing a graphics primitive
END	finish drawing a graphics primitive
VERTEX2F	supply a vertex with fractional coordinates
VERTEX2II	supply a vertex with unsigned coordinates

4.3.3 Execution Control

NOP	No Operation
JUMP	execute commands at another location in the display list
MACRO	execute a single command from a macro register
CALL	execute a sequence of commands at another location in the display list
RETURN	return from a previous CALL command
DISPLAY	end the display list

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.4 ALPHA_FUNC

Specify the alpha test function

Encoding

31 24	23 11	10 8	7 0
0x09	**reserved**	**func**	**ref**

Parameters

func
Specifies the test function, one of NEVER, LESS, LEQUAL, GREATER, GEQUAL, EQUAL, NOTEQUAL, or ALWAYS. The initial value is ALWAYS (7)

NAME	VALUE
NEVER	0
LESS	1
LEQUAL	2
GREATER	3
GEQUAL	4
EQUAL	5
NOTEQUAL	6
ALWAYS	7

ref
Specifies the reference value for the alpha test. The initial value is 0

Graphics context

The values of func and ref are part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1

See also

None

4.5 BEGIN

Begin drawing a graphics primitive

Encoding

31 24	23 4	3 0
0x1F	**reserved**	**prim**

Parameters

prim
The graphics primitive to be executed. The valid values are defined as below:

Name	Value	Description
BITMAPS	1	Bitmap drawing primitive
POINTS	2	Point drawing primitive
LINES	3	Line drawing primitive
LINE_STRIP	4	Line strip drawing primitive
EDGE_STRIP_R	5	Edge strip right side drawing primitive
EDGE_STRIP_L	6	Edge strip left side drawing primitive

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

EDGE_STRIP_A	7	Edge strip above drawing primitive
EDGE_STRIP_B	8	Edge strip below side drawing primitive
RECTS	9	Rectangle drawing primitive

Table 11 – Graphics Primitive Definition

Description

All primitives supported are defined in the table above. The primitive to be drawn is selected by the **BEGIN** command. Once the primitive is selected, it will be valid till the new primitive is selected by the **BEGIN** command.

Please note that the primitive drawing operation will not be performed until **VERTEX2II** or **VERTEX2F** is executed.

Examples

Drawing points, lines and bitmaps:

```
dl( BEGIN(POINTS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 5, 0, 0) );
dl( VERTEX2II(110, 15, 0, 0) );
dl( BEGIN(LINES) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 45, 0, 0) );
dl( VERTEX2II(110, 55, 0, 0) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 65, 31, 0x45) );
dl( VERTEX2II(110, 75, 31, 0x46) );
```

Graphics context

None

See also

END

4.6 BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT

Specify the extended format of the bitmap

Encoding

31 — 24	23 — 16	15 — 0
0x2E	**reserved**	**format**

Parameters

format
Bitmap pixel format.

Description

If **BITMAP_LAYOUT** specifies a format for **GLFORMAT**, then the format is taken from **BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT** instead.

Valid values for the field format are:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Format Name	Value	Bits per Pixel
ARGB1555	0	16
L1	1	1
L4	2	4
L8	3	8
RGB332	4	8
ARGB2	5	8
ARGB4	6	16
RGB565	7	16
TEXT8X8	9	8
TEXTVGA	10	8
BARGRAPH	11	8
PALETTED565	14	8
PALETTED4444	15	8
PALETTED8	16	8
L2	17	2
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_4x4_KHR	37808	8.00
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_5x4_KHR	37809	6.40
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_5x5_KHR	37810	5.12
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_6x5_KHR	37811	4.27
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_6x6_KHR	37812	3.56
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_8x5_KHR	37813	3.20
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_8x6_KHR	37814	2.67
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_8x8_KHR	37815	2.00
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_10x5_KHR	37816	2.56
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_10x6_KHR	37817	2.13
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_10x8_KHR	37818	1.60
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_10x10_KHR	37819	1.28
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_12x10_KHR	37820	1.07
COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_12x12_KHR	37821	0.89

Table 12 – Bitmap formats and bits per pixel

Graphics context

None

See also

BITMAP_LAYOUT

4.7 BITMAP_HANDLE

Specify the bitmap handle

Encoding

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

31 24	23 5	4 0
0x05	**reserved**	**handle**

Parameters

handle
Bitmap handle. The initial value is 0. The valid value range is from 0 to 31.

Description

By default, bitmap handles 16 to 31 are used for built-in font and 15 is used as scratch bitmap handle by coprocessor engine commands **CMD_GRADIENT, CMD_BUTTON** and **CMD_KEYS.**

Graphics context

The value of handle is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

BITMAP_LAYOUT, BITMAP_SIZE

4.8 BITMAP_LAYOUT

Specify the source bitmap memory format and layout for the current handle.

Encoding

31 24	23 19	18 9	8 0
0x07	**format**	**linestride**	**height**

Parameters

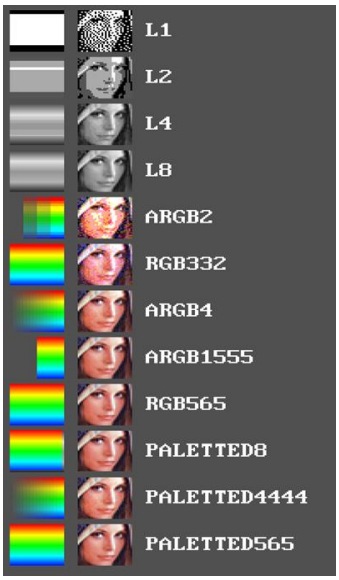
format
Bitmap pixel format. The valid range is from 0 to 17 and defined as per the table below.

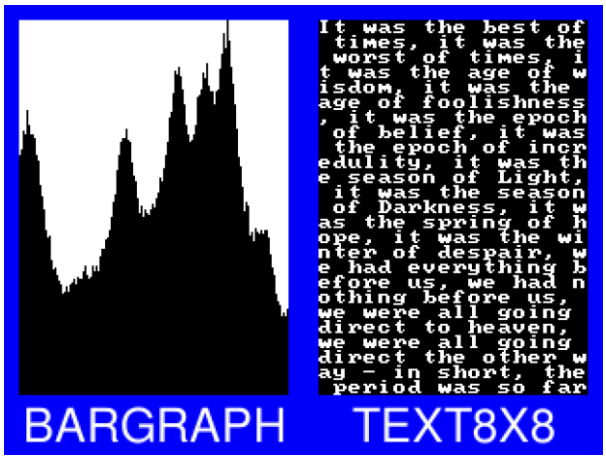
Name	Value	Bits/pixel	Alpha bits	Red bits	Green bits	Blue bits
ARGB1555	0	16	1	5	5	5
L1	1	1	1	0	0	0
L4	2	4	4	0	0	0
L8	3	8	8	0	0	0
RGB332	4	8	0	3	3	2
ARGB2	5	8	2	2	2	2
ARGB4	6	16	4	4	4	4
RGB565	7	16	0	5	6	5
TEXT8X8	9	-	-	-	-	-
TEXTVGA	10	-	-	-	-	-
BARGRAPH	11	-	-	-	-	-
PALETTED565	14	8	0	5	6	5
PALETTED4444	15	8	4	4	4	4
PALETTED8	16	8	8	8	8	8
L2	17	2	2	0	0	0
GLFORMAT	31	**Check BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT**				

Table 13 – BITMAP_LAYOUT Format List

Examples of various supported bitmap formats (except **TXTVGA**) are shown as below:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd





BARGRAPH – render data as a bar graph. Looks up the x coordinate in a byte array, then gives an opaque pixel if the byte value is less than y, otherwise a transparent pixel. The result is a bar graph of the bitmap data. A maximum of screen widthx256 size bitmap can be drawn using the BARGRAPH format. Orientation, width and height of the graph can be altered using the bitmap transform matrix.

TEXT8X8 – lookup in a fixed 8x8 font. The bitmap is a byte array present in the graphics ram and each byte indexes into an internal 8x8 *CP437*[1] font (built-in bitmap handles 16 & 17 are used for drawing TEXT8X8 format). The result is that the bitmap acts like a character grid. A single bitmap can be drawn which covers all or part of the display; each byte in the bitmap data corresponds to one 8x8 pixel character cell.

TEXTVGA – lookup in a fixed 8x16 font with TEXTVGA syntax. The bitmap is a TEXTVGA array present in the graphics ram, each element indexes into an internal 8x16 *CP437* font (built-in bitmap handles 18 & 19 are used for drawing TEXTVGA format with control information such as background color, foreground color and cursor etc.). The result is that the bitmap acts like a TEXTVGA grid. A single bitmap can be drawn which covers all or part of the display; each TEXTVGA data type in the bitmap corresponds to one 8x16 pixel character cell.
linestride – Bitmap line strides, in bytes. This represents the amount of memory used for each line of bitmap pixels.

[1] https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Code_page_437

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

For **L1, L2, L4** format, the necessary data has to be padded to make it byte aligned. Normally, it can be calculated with the following formula:

$$\text{linestride} = \text{width} * \text{byte/pixel}$$

For example, if one bitmap is 64x32 pixels in L4 format, the line stride shall be

$$(64 * 1/2 = 32)$$

height - Bitmap height, in lines

Description

For more details about memory layout according to pixel format, refer to the figures below:

L1 Format							
Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Pixel 0	Pixel 1	Pixel 2	Pixel 3	Pixel 4	Pixel 5	Pixel 6	Pixel 7

L2 Format			
Bit 7 6	Bit 5 4	Bit 3 2	Bit 1 0
Pixel 0	Pixel 1	Pixel 2	Pixel 3

L4 Format	
7 4	3 0
Pixel 0	Pixel 1

L8 Format
7 0
Pixel 0

Table 14 – L1/L2/L4/L8 Pixel Format

ARGB2 Format			
7 6	5 4	3 2	1 0
Alpha Chanel	Red Channel	Green Channel	Blue Channel

RGB332 Format		
7 5	4 2	1 0
Red Channel	Green Channel	Blue Channel

Table 15 – ARGB2/RGB332 Pixel Format

RGB565/PALETTED565 Format		
15 11	10 5	4 0
Red Channel	Green Channel	Blue Channel

Table 16 – RGB565/PALETTED565 Pixel Format

ARGB1555 Format			
15	14 10	9 5	4 0
Alpha Chanel	Red Channel	Green Channel	Blue Channel

ARGB4/PALETTED4444 Format			
15 12	11 8	7 4	3 0
Alpha Chanel	Red Channel	Green Channel	Blue Channel

Table 17 – ARGB1555/ARGB4/PALETTED4444 Pixel Format

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

PALETTED8 Format			
31 24	23 16	15 8	7 0
Alpha Chanel	Red Channel	Green Channel	Blue Channel

Table 18 – PALETTED8 Pixel Format

Note: PALETTED8 is 8 bits per pixel as each pixel is represented by an 8-bit index value in the look-up table. It has a color depth of 24-bits and 8-bit alpha.

Graphics Context

None

Note: **PALETTED8** format is supported indirectly and it is different from **PALETTED** format in FT80X. To render Alpha, Red, Green and Blue channels, multi-pass drawing action is required.

The following display list snippet shows:

```
//addr_pal is the starting address of palette lookup table in RAM_G
//bitmap source(palette indices) is starting from address 0

dl(BITMAP_HANDLE(0))
dl(BITMAP_LAYOUT(PALETTED8, width, height))
dl(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, width, height))

dl(BITMAP_SOURCE(0)) //bitmap source(palette indices)

dl(BEGIN(BITMAPS))
dl(BLEND_FUNC(ONE, ZERO))

//Draw Alpha channel
dl(COLOR_MASK(0,0,0,1))
dl(PALETTE_SOURCE(addr_pal+3))
dl(VERTEX2II(0, 0, 0, 0))

//Draw Red channel
dl(BLEND_FUNC(DST_ALPHA, ONE_MINUS_DST_ALPHA))
dl(COLOR_MASK(1,0,0,0))
dl(PALETTE_SOURCE (addr_pal+2))
dl(VERTEX2II (0, 0, 0, 0))

//Draw Green channel
dl(COLOR_MASK(0,1,0,0))
dl(PALETTE_SOURCE(addr_pal + 1))
dl(VERTEX2II(0, 0, 0, 0))

//Draw Blue channel
dl(COLOR_MASK(0,0,1,0))
dl(PALETTE_SOURCE(addr_pal))
dl(VERTEX2II(0, 0, 0, 0))
```

Code Snippet 10 – PALETTED8 Drawing Example

See also

BITMAP_HANDLE, BITMAP_SIZE, BITMAP_SOURCE, PALETTE_SOURCE

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.9 BITMAP_LAYOUT_H

Specify the 2 most significant bits of the source bitmap memory format and layout for the current handle.

Encoding

31 24	23 4	3 2	1 0
0x28	**reserved**	**linestride**	**height**

Parameters

linestride
The 2 most significant bits of the 12-bit line stride parameter value specified to **BITMAP_LAYOUT**.

height
The 2 most significant bits of the 11-bit height parameter value specified to **BITMAP_LAYOUT**.

Description

This command is the extension command of **BITMAP_LAYOUT** for bitmap larger than 511 by 511 pixels.

Examples

NA

See also

BITMAP_LAYOUT

4.10 BITMAP_SIZE

Specify the screen drawing of bitmaps for the current handle

Encoding

31 24	23 21	20	19	18	17 9	8 0
0x08	**reserved**	**filter**	**wrapx**	**wrapy**	**width**	**height**

Parameters

filter
Bitmap filtering mode, one of NEAREST or BILINEAR.
The value of NEAREST is 0 and the value of BILINEAR is 1.

wrapx
Bitmap x wrap mode, one of REPEAT or BORDER
The value of BORDER is 0 and the value of REPEAT is 1.

wrapy
Bitmap y wrap mode, one of REPEAT or BORDER
The value of BORDER is 0 and the value of REPEAT is 1.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

width
Drawn bitmap width, in pixels. From 1 to 511. Zero has special meaning.

height
Drawn bitmap height, in pixels. From 1 to 511. Zero has special meaning.

Description

This command controls the drawing of bitmaps: the on-screen size of the bitmap, the behavior for wrapping, and the filtering function. Please note that if wrapx or wrapy is **REPEAT** then the corresponding memory layout dimension (BITMAP_LAYOUT line stride or height) must be power of two, otherwise the result is undefined.

For width and height, the value from 1 to 511 means the bitmap width and height in pixel. The value zero has the special meaning if there are no **BITMAP_SIZE_H** present before or a high bit in **BITMAP_SIZE_H** is zero: it means 2048 pixels, other than 0 pixels.

4.11 BITMAP_SIZE_H

Specify the 2 most significant bits of bitmaps dimension for the current handle.

Encoding

31 24	23 4	3 2	1 0
0x29	**reserved**	**width**	**height**

Parameters

width
2 most significant bits of bitmap width. The initial value is zero.

Height
2 most significant bits of bitmap height. The initial value is zero.

Description

This command is the extension command of **BITMAP_SIZE** for bitmap larger than 511 by 511 pixels.

Graphics context

None

See also

BITMAP_HANDLE, BITMAP_LAYOUT, BITMAP_SOURCE, BITMAP_SIZE

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.12 BITMAP_SOURCE

Specify the source address of bitmap data in **RAM_G** or flash memory.

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x01	**addr**

Parameters

addr
Bitmap address in **RAM_G or flash memory**, aligned with respect to the bitmap format. For example, if the bitmap format is **RGB565/ARGB4/ARGB1555**, the bitmap source shall be aligned to 2 bytes.

Description

The bitmap source address specifies the address of the bitmap graphic data. If bit 23 is 0, then bits 0-22 give the byte address in **RAM_G**. If bit 23 is 1, then bits 0-22, multiplied by 32, specifies the byte address in external flash memory.

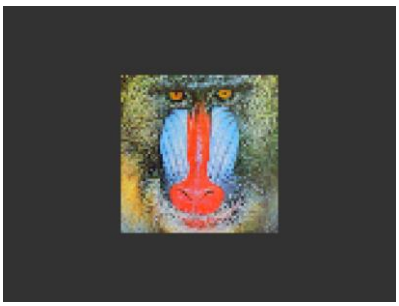
Note that in some rare cases when setting bitmap source address in RAM_G where the bitmap source address may be negative (such as loading a font which begins at address RAM_G+0 and has pointer to raw data calculated to be negative) the value passed to BITMAP_SOURCE should be masked so that only bits 0-22 are written to ensure that bit 23 is not written to 1.

For example, if addr is (0x800000 | 422), the byte address in external flash memory refers to 13504(422*32).

However, only bitmap data of ASTC specific format can be rendered directly from flash memory. For the bitmap data of any non-ASTC specific format in flash memory, **CMD_FLASHREAD** is required to copy the data from flash into RAM_G so that EVE can render it correctly.

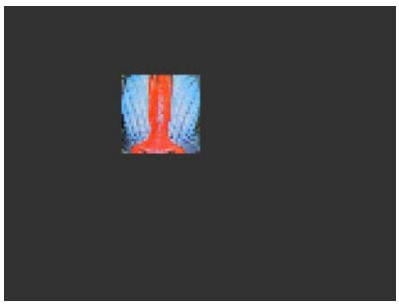
Examples

Drawing a 64 x 64 bitmap, loaded at address 0:



```
dl( BITMAP_SOURCE(0) );
dl( BITMAP_LAYOUT(RGB565, 128, 64) );
dl( BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER,
64, 64) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(48, 28, 0, 0) );
```

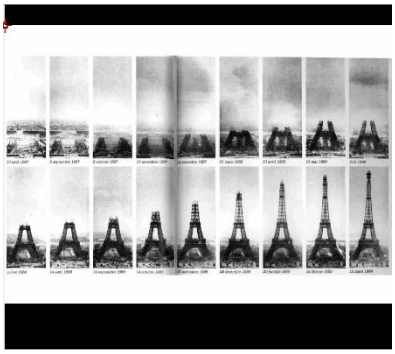
Using the same graphics data, but with source and size changed to show only a 32 x 32 detail:



```
dl( BITMAP_SOURCE(128 * 16 + 32) );
dl( BITMAP_LAYOUT(RGB565, 128, 64) );
dl( BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 32,
32) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(48, 28, 0, 0) );
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Display one 800x480 image by using extended display list commands mentioned above:



```
dl(BITMAP_HANDLE(0));
dl(BITMAP_SOURCE(0));
dl(BITMAP_SIZE_H(1, 0));
dl(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 288,
480));
dl(BITMAP_LAYOUT_H(1, 0));
dl(BITMAP_LAYOUT(ARGB1555, 576, 480));
dl(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
dl(VERTEX2II(76, 25, 0, 0));
dl(END());
```

Graphics context

None

See also

BITMAP_LAYOUT, BITMAP_SIZE

4.13 BITMAP_SWIZZLE

Set the source for the red, green, blue and alpha channels of a bitmap.

Encoding

31 24	23 12	11 9	8 6	5 3	2 0
0x2f	**reserved**	**r**	**g**	**b**	**a**

Parameters

r
red component source channel

g
green component source channel

b
blue component source channel

a
alpha component source channel

Description

Bitmap swizzle allows the channels of the bitmap to be exchanged or copied into the final color channels. Each final color component can be sourced from any of the bitmap color components, or can be set to zero or one. Valid values for each source are:

Name	Value	Description
ZERO	**0**	Set the source channel to zero
ONE	**1**	Set the source channel to 1
RED	**2**	Specify **RED** component as source channel

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

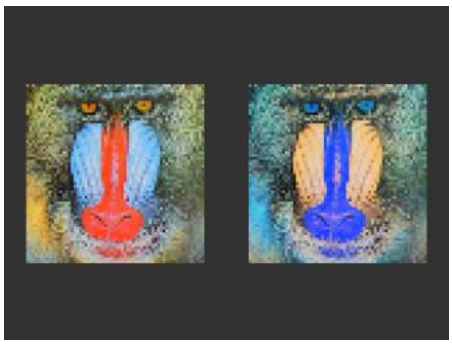
GREEN	**3**	Specify **GREEN** component as source channel
BLUE	**4**	Specify **BLUE** component as source channel
ALPHA	**5**	Specify **ALPHA** component as source channel

Bitmap swizzle is only applied when the format parameter of **BITMAP_LAYOUT** is specified as **GLFORMAT**. Otherwise the four components are in their default order. The default swizzle is (RED, GREEN, BLUE, ALPHA)

Note: Please refer to OpenGL API specification for more details

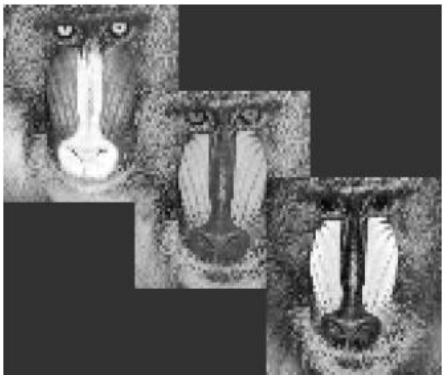
Examples

Bitmap drawn with default swizzle, and with red/blue exchanged:



```
dl(BITMAP_SOURCE(0));
dl(BITMAP_LAYOUT(GLFORMAT, 128, 64));
dl(BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT(RGB565));
dl(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 64,
64));
dl(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
dl(BITMAP_SWIZZLE(RED,      GREEN,      BLUE,
ALPHA));
dl(VERTEX2II(8, 28, 0, 0));
dl(BITMAP_SWIZZLE(BLUE,      GREEN,      RED,
ALPHA));
dl(VERTEX2II(88, 28, 0, 0));
```

Red, green, and blue channels extracted to create three grayscale images:



```
dl(BITMAP_LAYOUT(GLFORMAT, 128, 64));
dl(BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT(RGB565));
dl(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
dl(BITMAP_SWIZZLE(RED, RED, RED, ALPHA));
dl(VERTEX2II(0, 0, 0, 0));
dl(BITMAP_SWIZZLE(GREEN,    GREEN,    GREEN,
ALPHA));
dl(VERTEX2II(48, 28, 0, 0));
dl(BITMAP_SWIZZLE(BLUE,      BLUE,      BLUE,
ALPHA));
dl(VERTEX2II(96, 56, 0, 0));
```

Graphics Context

None

See also

None

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.14 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A

Specify the A coefficient of the bitmap transform matrix.

Encoding

31 24	23 18	17	16 0
0x15	**reserved**	**p**	**v**

Parameters

p
Precision control: 0 is 8.8, 1 is 1.15.The initial value is 0.

v
A component of the bitmap transform matrix, in signed 8.8 or 1.15 fixed point form. The initial value is 256.

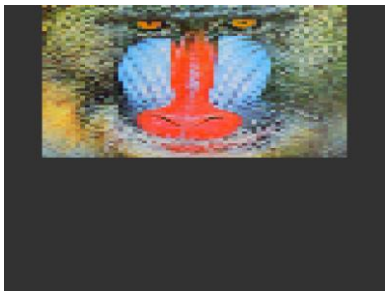
Note: The parameters of this command are changed in BT81X.

Description

BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F coefficients are used to perform bitmap transform functionalities such as scaling, rotation and translation. These are similar to OpenGL transform functionality.

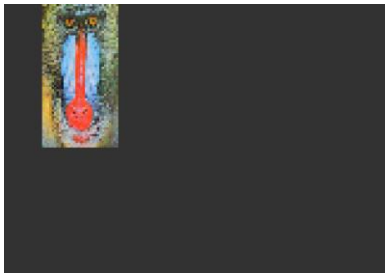
Examples

A value of 0.5 (128) causes the bitmap appear double width:



```
dl( BITMAP_SOURCE(0) );
dl( BITMAP_LAYOUT(RGB565, 128, 64) );
dl( BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A(128) );
dl(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 128, 128)
);
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(16, 0, 0, 0) );
```

A value of 2.0 (512) gives a half-width bitmap:



```
dl( BITMAP_SOURCE(0) );
dl( BITMAP_LAYOUT(RGB565, 128, 64) );
dl( BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A(512) );
dl(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST,  BORDER,  BORDER,  128,
128) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(16, 0, 0, 0) );
```

Graphics Context

The value of p,v is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1

See also

None

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.15 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_B

Specify the b coefficient of the bitmap transform matrix

Encoding

31 24	23 18	17	16 0
0x16	**reserved**	**p**	**v**

Parameters

p
Precision control: 0 is 8.8, 1 is 1.15.The initial value is 0.

v
The component of the bitmap transform matrix, in signed 8.8 or 1.15 fixed point form. The initial value is 0.

Description

BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F coefficients are used to perform bitmap transform functionalities such as scaling, rotation and translation. These are similar to OpenGL transform functionality.

Note: The parameters of this command are changed in BT81X.

Graphics context

The value of p, v is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

None

4.16 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_C

Specify the c coefficient of the bitmap transform matrix

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x17	**c**

Parameters

c
The c component of the bitmap transform matrix, in signed 15.8 bit fixed-point form. The initial value is 0.

Description

BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F coefficients are used to perform bitmap transform functionalities such as scaling, rotation and translation. These are similar to OpenGL transform functionality.

Graphics context

The value of c is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

None

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.17 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_D

Specify the d coefficient of the bitmap transform matrix

Encoding

31 24	23 18	17	16 0
0x18	**reserved**	**p**	**v**

Parameters

p
Precision control: 0 is 8.8, 1 is 1.15.The initial value is 0.

v
The d component of the bitmap transform matrix, in signed 8.8 or 1.15 fixed point form. The initial value is 0.

Note: The parameters of this command are changed in BT81X.

Description

BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F coefficients are used to perform bitmap transform functionalities such as scaling, rotation and translation. These are similar to OpenGL transform functionality.

Graphics context

The value of p, v of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

None

4.18 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_E

Specify the E coefficient of the bitmap transform matrix.

Encoding

31 24	23 18	17	16 0
0x19	**reserved**	**p**	**v**

Parameters

p
Precision control: 0 is 8.8, 1 is 1.15.The initial value is 0.

v
The e component of the bitmap transform matrix, in signed 8.8 or 1.15 fixed point form. The initial value is 256.

Description

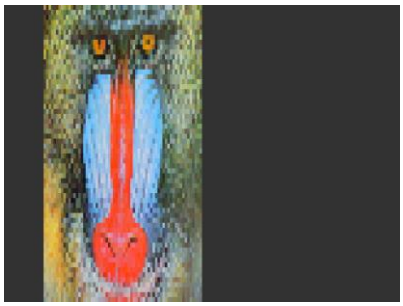
BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F coefficients are used to perform bitmap transform functionalities such as scaling, rotation and translation. These are similar to OpenGL transform functionality.

Note: The parameters of this command are changed in BT81X.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

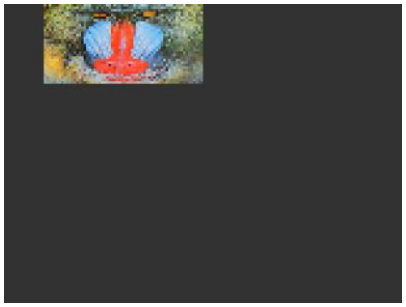
Examples

A value of 0.5 (128) causes the bitmap appear double height:



```
dl( BITMAP_SOURCE(0) );
dl( BITMAP_LAYOUT(RGB565, 128, 64) );
dl( BITMAP_TRANSFORM_E(128) );
dl( BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 128,
128) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(16, 0, 0, 0) );
```

A value of 2.0 (512) gives a half-height bitmap:



```
dl( BITMAP_SOURCE(0) );
dl( BITMAP_LAYOUT(RGB565, 128, 64) );
dl( BITMAP_TRANSFORM_E(512) );
dl( BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 128,
128) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(16, 0, 0, 0) )
```

Graphics context

The value of p and v of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1

See also

None

4.19 BITMAP_TRANSFORM_F

Specify the f coefficient of the bitmap transform matrix

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x1A	**f**

Parameters

f
The f component of the bitmap transform matrix, in signed 15.8 bit fixed-point form. The initial value is 0.

Description

BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F coefficients are used to perform bitmap transform functionalities such as scaling, rotation and translation. These are similar to **OpenGL** transformation functionality.

Graphics context

The value of f is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

See also

None

4.20 BLEND_FUNC

Specify pixel arithmetic

Encoding

31 24	23 6	5 3	2 0
0x0B	**reserved**	**src**	**dst**

Parameters

src
Specifies how the source blending factor is computed. One of ZERO, ONE, SRC_ALPHA, DST_ALPHA, ONE_MINUS_SRC_ALPHA or ONE_MINUS_DST_ALPHA. The initial value is SRC_ALPHA (2).

dst
Specifies how the destination blending factor is computed, one of the same constants as src. The initial value is ONE_MINUS_SRC_ALPHA(4)

Name	Value	Description
ZERO	0	Check OpenGL definition
ONE	1	Check OpenGL definition
SRC_ALPHA	2	Check OpenGL definition
DST_ALPHA	3	Check OpenGL definition
ONE_MINUS_SRC_ALPHA	4	Check OpenGL definition
ONE_MINUS_DST_ALPHA	5	Check OpenGL definition

Table 19 – BLEND_FUNC Constant Value Definition

Description

The blend function controls how new color values are combined with the values already in the color buffer. Given a pixel value source and a previous value in the color buffer destination, the computed color is:

$$source \times \mathrm{src} + destination \times \mathrm{dst}$$

For each color channel: red, green, blue and alpha.

Examples

The default blend function of (SRC_ALPHA, ONE_MINUS_SRC_ALPHA) causes drawing to overlay the destination using the alpha value:

```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 30, 31, 0x47) );
dl( COLOR_A( 128 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(60, 40, 31, 0x47) );
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

A destination factor of zero means that destination pixels are not used:

```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( BLEND_FUNC(SRC_ALPHA, ZERO) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 30, 31, 0x47) );
dl( COLOR_A( 128 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(60, 40, 31, 0x47) );
```

Using the source alpha to control how much of the destination to keep:

```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( BLEND_FUNC(ZERO, SRC_ALPHA) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 30, 31, 0x47) );
```

Graphics context

The values of src and dst are part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

COLOR_A

4.21 CALL

Execute a sequence of commands at another location in the display list

Encoding

31 24	23 16	15 0
0x1D	**reserved**	**dest**

Parameters

dest
The offset of the destination address from **RAM_DL** which the display command is to be switched. **EVE** has the stack to store the return address. To come back to the next command of source address, the **RETURN** command can help.

The valid range is from 0 to 8191.

Description

CALL and RETURN have a 4 level stack in addition to the current pointer. Any additional CALL/RETURN done will lead to unexpected behavior.

Graphics context

None

See also

JUMP, RETURN

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.22 CELL

Specify the bitmap cell number for the **VERTEX2F** command.

Encoding

31 24	23 7	6 0
0x06	**reserved**	**cell**

Parameters

cell
bitmap cell number. The initial value is 0

Graphics context

The value of cell is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

None

4.23 CLEAR

Clear buffers to preset values

Encoding

31 24	23 3	2	1	0
0x26	**reserved**	**c**	**s**	**t**

Parameters

c
Clear color buffer. Setting this bit to 1 will clear the color buffer to the preset value. Setting this bit to 0 will maintain the color buffer with an unchanged value. The preset value is defined in command CLEAR_COLOR_RGB for RGB channel and CLEAR_COLOR_A for alpha channel.

s
Clear stencil buffer. Setting this bit to 1 will clear the stencil buffer to the preset value. Setting this bit to 0 will maintain the stencil buffer with an unchanged value. The preset value is defined in command CLEAR_STENCIL.

t
Clear tag buffer. Setting this bit to 1 will clear the tag buffer to the preset value. Setting this bit to 0 will maintain the tag buffer with an unchanged value. The preset value is defined in command CLEAR_TAG.

Description

The scissor test and the buffer write masks affect the operation of the clear. Scissor limits the cleared rectangle, and the buffer write masks limit the affected buffers. The state of the alpha function, blend function, and stenciling do not affect the clear.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Examples

To clear the screen to bright blue:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(0, 0, 255) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 0, 0) );
```

To clear part of the screen to gray, part to blue using scissor rectangles:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(100, 100, 100) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 1, 1) );
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(0, 0, 255) );
dl( SCISSOR_SIZE(30, 120) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 1, 1) );
```

Graphics context

None

See also

CLEAR_COLOR_A, CLEAR_STENCIL, CLEAR_TAG, CLEAR_COLOR_RGB

4.24 CLEAR_COLOR_A

Specify clear value for the alpha channel

Encoding

31 24	23 8	7 0
0x0F	**reserved**	**alpha**

Parameters

alpha
Alpha value used when the color buffer is cleared. The initial value is 0.

Graphics context

The value of alpha is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

CLEAR_COLOR_RGB, CLEAR

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.25 CLEAR_COLOR_RGB

Specify clear values for red, green and blue channels

Encoding

31 24	23 16	15 8	7 0
0x02	**red**	**blue**	**green**

Parameters

red
Red value used when the color buffer is cleared. The initial value is 0.

green
Green value used when the color buffer is cleared. The initial value is 0.

blue
Blue value used when the color buffer is cleared. The initial value is 0.

Description

Sets the color values used by a following **CLEAR**.

Examples

To clear the screen to bright blue:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(0, 0, 255) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 1, 1) );
```

To clear part of the screen to gray, part to blue using scissor rectangles:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(100, 100, 100) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 1, 1) );
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(0, 0, 255) );
dl( SCISSOR_SIZE(30, 120) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 1, 1) );
```

Graphics context

The values of red, green and blue are part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

CLEAR_COLOR_A, CLEAR

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.26 CLEAR_STENCIL

Specify clear value for the stencil buffer

Encoding

31 24	23 8	7 0
0x11	**reserved**	**s**

Parameters

s
Value used when the stencil buffer is cleared. The initial value is 0

Graphics context

The value of s is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

CLEAR

4.27 CLEAR_TAG

Specify clear value for the tag buffer

Encoding

31 24	23 8	7 0
0x12	**reserved**	**t**

Parameters

t
Value used when the tag buffer is cleared. The initial value is 0.

Graphics context

The value of s is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

TAG, TAG_MASK, CLEAR

4.28 COLOR_A

Set the current color alpha

Encoding

31 24	23 8	7 0
0x10	**reserved**	**alpha**

Parameters

alpha
Alpha for the current color. The initial value is 255

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Description

Sets the alpha value applied to drawn elements – points, lines, and bitmaps. How the alpha value affects image pixels depends on BLEND_FUNC; the default behavior is a transparent blend.

Examples

Drawing three characters with transparency 255, 128, and 64:

```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 30, 31, 0x47) );
dl( COLOR_A( 128 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(58, 38, 31, 0x47) );
dl( COLOR_A( 64 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(66, 46, 31, 0x47) );
```

Graphics context

The value of alpha is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

COLOR_RGB, BLEND_FUNC

4.29 COLOR_MASK

Enable or disable writing of color components

Encoding

31 24	23 4	3	2	1	0
0x20	**reserved**	**r**	**g**	**b**	**a**

Parameters

r
Enable or disable the red channel update of the color buffer. The initial value is 1 and means enable.

g
Enable or disable the green channel update of the color buffer. The initial value is 1 and means enable.

b
Enable or disable the blue channel update of the color buffer. The initial value is 1 and means enable.

a
Enable or disable the alpha channel update of the color buffer. The initial value is 1 and means enable.

Description

The color mask controls whether the color values of a pixel are updated. Sometimes it is used to selectively update only the red, green, blue or alpha channels of the image. More often, it is used to completely disable color updates while updating the tag and stencil buffers.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Examples

Draw an '8' digit in the middle of the screen. Then paint an invisible 40-pixel circular touch area into the tag buffer:

```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(68, 40, 31, 0x38) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(40 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_MASK(0, 0, 0, 0) );
dl( BEGIN(POINTS) );
dl( TAG( 0x38 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(80, 60, 0, 0) );
```

Graphics context

The values of r, g, b and a are part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

TAG_MASK

4.30 COLOR_RGB

Set the current color red, green and blue.

Encoding

31 24	23 16	15 8	7 0
0x04	**red**	**blue**	**green**

Parameters

red
Red value for the current color. The initial value is 255

green
Green value for the current color. The initial value is 255

blue
Blue value for the current color. The initial value is 255

Description

Sets the red, green and blue values of the color buffer which will be applied to the following draw operation.

Examples

Drawing three characters with different colors:

```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 38, 31, 0x47) );
dl( COLOR_RGB( 255, 100, 50 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(80, 38, 31, 0x47) );
dl( COLOR_RGB( 50, 100, 255 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(110, 38, 31, 0x47) );
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Graphics context

The values of red, green and blue are part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

COLOR_A

4.31 DISPLAY

End the display list. All the commands following this command will be ignored.

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x0	**reserved**

Parameters

None

Graphics context

None

See also

None

4.32 END

End drawing a graphics primitive.

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x21	**reserved**

Parameters

None

Description

It is recommended to have an **END** for each **BEGIN**. However, advanced users may avoid the usage of **END** in order to save space for extra graphics instructions in RAM_DL.

Graphics context

None

See also

BEGIN

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.33 JUMP

Execute commands at another location in the display list

Encoding

31 24	23 16	15 0
0x1E	**reserved**	**dest**

Parameters

dest
Display list address (offset from RAM_DL) to be jumped. The valid range is from 0 to 8191.

Graphics context

None

See also

CALL

4.34 LINE_WIDTH

Specify the width of lines to be drawn with primitive LINES in 1/16 pixel precision.

Encoding

31 24	23 12	11 0
0x0E	**reserved**	**width**

Parameters

width
Line width in 1/16 pixel precision. The initial value is 16.

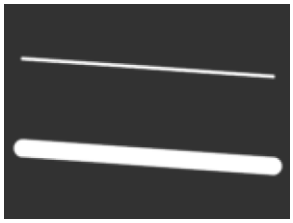
Description

Sets the width of drawn lines. The width is the distance from the center of the line to the outermost drawn pixel, in units of 1/16 pixel. The valid range is from 1 to 4095. i.e. from 1 to 255 pixels.

Please note the LINE_WIDTH command will affect the LINES, LINE_STRIP, RECTS, EDGE_STRIP_A/B/R/L primitives.

Note: The lines are drawn with the requested width, but below around 6 the pixels get very dark and hard to see. Half pixel lines (width 8) are totally usable.

Examples
The second line is drawn with a width of 80, for a 5 pixel radius:



```
dl( BEGIN(LINES) );
dl( VERTEX2F(16 * 10, 16 * 30) );
dl( VERTEX2F(16 * 150, 16 * 40) );
dl( LINE_WIDTH(80) );
dl( VERTEX2F(16 * 10, 16 * 80) );
dl( VERTEX2F(16 * 150, 16 * 90) );
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Graphics context

The value of width is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

None

4.35 MACRO

Execute a single command from a macro register.

Encoding

31 24	23 1	0
0x25	**reserved**	**m**

Parameters

m
Macro registers to read. Value 0 means the content in **REG_MACRO_0** is to be fetched and inserted in place. Value 1 means **REG_MACRO_1** is to be fetched and inserted in place. The content of **REG_MACRO_0** or **REG_MACRO_1** shall be a valid display list command, otherwise the behavior is undefined.

Graphics context

None

See also

None

4.36 NOP

No operation.

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x2D	**reserved**

Parameters

None

Description

Does nothing. May be used as a spacer in display lists, if required.

Graphics context

None

See also

None

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.37 PALETTE_SOURCE

Specify the base address of the palette.

Encoding

31 24	23 22	21 0
0x2A	**reserved**	**addr**

Parameters

addr
Address of palette in **RAM_G**, 2-byte alignment is required if pixel format is **PALETTE4444** or **PALETTE565**. The initial value is **RAM_G**.

Description

Specify the base address in **RAM_G** for palette

Graphics context

The value of addr is part of the graphics context

See also

None

4.38 POINT_SIZE

Specify the radius of points

Encoding

31 24	23 13	12 0
0x0D	**reserved**	**size**

Parameters

size
Point radius in 1/16 pixel precision. The initial value is 16. The valid range is from zero to 8191, i.e. from 0 to 511 pixels.

Description

Sets the size of drawn points. The width is the distance from the center of the point to the outermost drawn pixel, in units of 1/16 pixels.

Examples

The second point is drawn with a width of 160, for a 10 pixel radius:

```
dl( BEGIN(POINTS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(40, 30, 0, 0) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(160) );
dl( VERTEX2II(120, 90, 0, 0) );
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Graphics context

The value of size is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

None

4.39 RESTORE_CONTEXT

Restore the current graphics context from the context stack.

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x23	**reserved**

Parameters

None

Description

Restores the current graphics context, as described in section 4.1. Four levels of **SAVE** and **RESTORE** stacks are available. Any extra **RESTORE_CONTEXT** will load the default values into the present context.

Examples

Saving and restoring context means that the second 'G' is drawn in red, instead of blue:

```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( COLOR_RGB( 255, 0, 0 ) );
dl( SAVE_CONTEXT() );
dl( COLOR_RGB( 50, 100, 255 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(80, 38, 31, 0x47) );
dl( RESTORE_CONTEXT() );
dl( VERTEX2II(110, 38, 31, 0x47) );
```

Graphics context

None

See also

SAVE_CONTEXT

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.40 RETURN

Return from a previous **CALL** command.

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x24	**reserved**

Parameters

None

Description

CALL and **RETURN** have 4 levels of stack in addition to the current pointer. Any additional **CALL/RETURN** done will lead to unexpected behavior.

Graphics context

None

See also

CALL

4.41 SAVE_CONTEXT

Push the current graphics context on the context stack

Encoding

31 24	23 0
0x22	**reserved**

Parameters

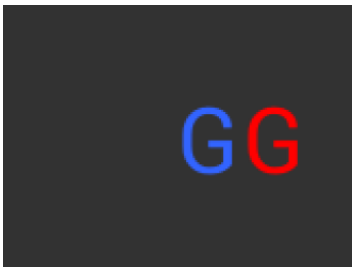
None

Description

Saves the current graphics context, as described in section 4.1. Any extra **SAVE_CONTEXT** will throw away the earliest saved context.

Examples

Saving and restoring context means that the second 'G' is drawn in red, instead of blue:




```
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( COLOR_RGB( 255, 0, 0 ) );
dl( SAVE_CONTEXT() );
dl( COLOR_RGB( 50, 100, 255 ) );
dl( VERTEX2II(80, 38, 31, 0x47) );
dl( RESTORE_CONTEXT() );
dl( VERTEX2II(110, 38, 31, 0x47)
);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Graphics context

None

See also

RESTORE_CONTEXT

4.42 SCISSOR_SIZE

Specify the size of the scissor clip rectangle.

Encoding

31 24	23 12	11 0
0x1C	**width**	**height**

Parameters

width
The width of the scissor clip rectangle, in pixels. The initial value is 2048.
The value of zero will cause zero output on screen.
The valid range is from zero to 2048.

height
The height of the scissor clip rectangle, in pixels. The initial value is 2048.
The value of zero will cause zero output on screen.
The valid range is from zero to 2048.

Description

Sets the width and height of the scissor clip rectangle, which limits the drawing area.

Examples

Setting a 40 x 30 scissor rectangle clips the clear and bitmap drawing:

```
dl( SCISSOR_XY(40, 30) );
dl( SCISSOR_SIZE(80, 60) );
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(0, 0, 255) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 1, 1) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(35, 20, 31, 0x47) );
```

Graphics context

The values of width and height are part of the graphics context 4.1.

See also

None

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.43 SCISSOR_XY

Specify the top left corner of the scissor clip rectangle.

Encoding

31 24	23 22	21 11	10 0
0x1B	**reserved**	**x**	**y**

Parameters

x
The unsigned x coordinate of the scissor clip rectangle, in pixels. The initial value is 0. The valid range is from zero to 2047.

y
The unsigned y coordinates of the scissor clip rectangle, in pixels. The initial value is 0. The valid range is from zero to 2047.

Description

Sets the top-left position of the scissor clip rectangle, which limits the drawing area.

Examples

Setting a 40 x 30 scissor rectangle clips the clear and bitmap drawing:

```
dl( SCISSOR_XY(40, 30) );
dl( SCISSOR_SIZE(80, 60) );
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(0, 0, 255) );
dl( CLEAR(1, 1, 1) );
dl( BEGIN(BITMAPS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(35, 20, 31, 0x47) );
```

Graphics context

The values of x and y are part of the graphics context 4.1

See also

None

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.44 STENCIL_FUNC

Set function and reference value for stencil testing.

Encoding

31 24	23 20	19 16	15 8	7 0
0x0A	**reserved**	**func**	**ref**	**mask**

Parameters

func
Specifies the test function, one of **NEVER, LESS, LEQUAL, GREATER, GEQUAL, EQUAL, NOTEQUAL,** or **ALWAYS**. The initial value is **ALWAYS**.
About the value of these constants, refer to **ALPHA_FUNC**.

ref
Specifies the reference value for the stencil test. The initial value is 0.

mask
Specifies a mask that is ANDed with the reference value and the stored stencil value. The initial value is 255

Description

Stencil test rejects or accepts pixels depending on the result of the test function defined in func parameter, which operates on the current value in the stencil buffer against the reference value.

Examples

Refer to STENCIL_OP.

Graphics context

The values of func, ref and mask are part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

STENCIL_OP, STENCIL_MASK

4.45 STENCIL_MASK

Control the writing of individual bits in the stencil planes

Encoding

31 24	23 8	7 0
0x13	**reserved**	**mask**

Parameters

mask
The mask used to enable writing stencil bits. The initial value is 255

Graphics context

The value of mask is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

See also

STENCIL_FUNC, STENCIL_OP, TAG_MASK

4.46 STENCIL_OP

Set stencil test actions.

Encoding

31 24	23 6	5 3	2 0
0x0C	**reserved**	**sfail**	**spass**

Parameters

sfail
Specifies the action to take when the stencil test fails, one of KEEP, ZERO, REPLACE, INCR, DECR, and INVERT. The initial value is KEEP (1)

spass
Specifies the action to take when the stencil test passes, one of the same constants as sfail. The initial value is KEEP (1)

Name	Value	Description
ZERO	0	check OpenGL definition
KEEP	1	check OpenGL definition
REPLACE	2	check OpenGL definition
INCR	3	check OpenGL definition
DECR	4	check OpenGL definition
INVERT	5	check OpenGL definition

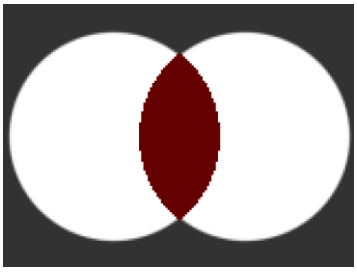
Table 20 – STENCIL_OP Constants Definition

Description

The stencil operation specifies how the stencil buffer is updated. The operation selected depends on whether the stencil test passes or not.

Examples

Draw two points, incrementing stencil at each pixel, then draw the pixels with value 2 in red:



```
dl( STENCIL_OP(INCR, INCR) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(760) );
dl( BEGIN(POINTS) );
dl( VERTEX2II(50, 60, 0, 0) );
dl( VERTEX2II(110, 60, 0, 0) );
dl( STENCIL_FUNC(EQUAL, 2, 255) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(100, 0, 0) );
dl( VERTEX2II(80, 60, 0, 0) );
```

Graphics context

The values of sfail and spass are part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

See also

STENCIL_FUNC, STENCIL_MASK

4.47 TAG

Attach the tag value for the following graphics objects drawn on the screen. The initial tag buffer value is 255.

Encoding

31 24	23 8	7 0
0x03	**reserved**	**s**

Parameters

s
Tag value. Valid value range is from 1 to 255.

Description

The initial value of the tag buffer is specified by command **CLEAR_TAG** and takes effect by issuing command **CLEAR**. The **TAG** command can specify the value of the tag buffer that applies to the graphics objects when they are drawn on the screen. This **TAG** value will be assigned to all the following objects, unless the **TAG_MASK** command is used to disable it. Once the following graphics objects are drawn, they are attached with the tag value successfully. When the graphics objects attached with the tag value are touched, the register **REG_TOUCH_TAG** will be updated with the tag value of the graphics object being touched.

If there are no TAG commands in one display list, all the graphics objects rendered by the display list will report the tag value as 255 in **REG_TOUCH_TAG** when they are touched.

Graphics context

The value of s is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

CLEAR_TAG, TAG_MASK

4.48 TAG_MASK

Control the writing of the tag buffer

Encoding

31 24	23 1	0
0x14	**reserved**	**mask**

Parameters

mask
Allow updates to the tag buffer. The initial value is one and it means the tag buffer is updated with the value given by the TAG command. Therefore, the following graphics objects will be attached to the tag value given by the TAG command.
The value zero means the tag buffer is set as the default value, rather than the value given by **TAG** command in the display list.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Description

Every graphics object drawn on screen is attached with the tag value which is defined in the tag buffer. The tag buffer can be updated by the **TAG** command.

The default value of the tag buffer is determined by **CLEAR_TAG** and **CLEAR** commands. If there is no **CLEAR_TAG** command present in the display list, the default value in tag buffer shall be 0.

TAG_MASK command decides whether the tag buffer takes the value from the default value of the tag buffer or the TAG command of the display list.

Graphics context

The value of mask is part of the graphics context, as described in section 4.1.

See also

TAG, CLEAR_TAG, STENCIL_MASK, COLOR_MASK

4.49 VERTEX2F

Start the operation of graphics primitives at the specified screen coordinate, in the pixel precision defined by **VERTEX_FORMAT**.

Encoding

31 30	29 15	14 0
0x1	**x**	**y**

Parameters

x
Signed x-coordinate in units of pixel precision defined in command **VERTEX_FORMAT**, which by default is 1/16 pixel precision.

y
Signed y-coordinate in units of pixel precision defined in command **VERTEX_FORMAT**, which by default is 1/16 pixel precision.

Description

The pixel precision depends on the value of **VERTEX_FORMAT**. The maximum range of coordinates depends on pixel precision and is described in the VERTEX_FORMAT instruction.

Graphics context

None

See also

VERTEX_FORMAT

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.50 VERTEX2II

Start the operation of graphics primitive at the specified coordinates in pixel precision.

Encoding

31 30	29 21	20 12	11 7	6 0
0x2	**x**	**y**	**handle**	**cell**

Parameters

x
X-coordinate in pixels, unsigned integer ranging from 0 to 511.

y
Y-coordinate in pixels, unsigned integer ranging from 0 to 511.

handle
Bitmap handle. The valid range is from 0 to 31.

cell
Cell number. Cell number is the index of the bitmap with same bitmap layout and format. For example, for handle 31, the cell 65 means the character "A" in built in font 31.

Note: The handle and cell parameters are ignored unless the graphics primitive is specified as bitmap by command **BEGIN(BITMAPS)**, prior to this command.

Description

To draw the graphics primitives beyond the coordinate range [(0,0), (511, 511)], use VERTEX2F instead.

Graphics context

None

See also

BITMAP_HANDLE, CELL, VERTEX2F

4.51 VERTEX_FORMAT

Set the precision of **VERTEX2F** coordinates.

Encoding

31 24	23 3	2 0
0x27	**reserved**	**frac**

Parameters

frac
Number of fractional bits in X, Y coordinates. Valid range is from 0 to 4. The initial value is 4.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Description

VERTEX2F uses 15 bit signed numbers for its (X,Y) coordinate. This command controls the interpretation of these numbers by specifying the number of fractional bits.

By varying the format, an application can trade range against precision.

Frac value	Unit of pixel precision	VERTEX2F range
0	$1 \quad pixel$	-16384 to 16383
1	$½ \ pixel$	-8192 to 8191
2	$¼ \ pixel$	-4096 to 4095
3	$1/8 \ pixel$	-2048 to 2047
4	$1/16 \ pixel$	-1024 to 1023

Table 21 – VERTEX_FORMAT and Pixel Precision

Graphics context

The value of **frac** is part of the graphics context

See also

VERTEX2F, VERTEX_TRANSLATE_X, VERTEX_TRANSLATE_Y

4.52 VERTEX_TRANSLATE_X

Specify the vertex transformations X translation component.

Encoding

31 24	23 17	16 0
0x2B	**reserved**	**x**

Parameters

x
Signed x-coordinate in $1/16$ pixel. The initial value is 0.

Description

Specifies the offset added to vertex X coordinates. This command allows drawing to be shifted on the screen. It applies to both **VERTEX2F** and **VERTEX2II** commands.

Graphics context

The value of x is part of the graphics context

See also

NONE

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

4.53 VERTEX_TRANSLATE_Y

Specify the vertex transformation's Y translation component.

Encoding

31 24	23 17	16 0
0x2C	**reserved**	**y**

Parameters

y
Signed y-coordinate in 1/16 pixel. The initial value is 0

Description

Specifies the offset added to vertex Y coordinates. This command allows drawing to be shifted on the screen. It applies to both **VERTEX2F** and **VERTEX2II** commands.

Graphics context

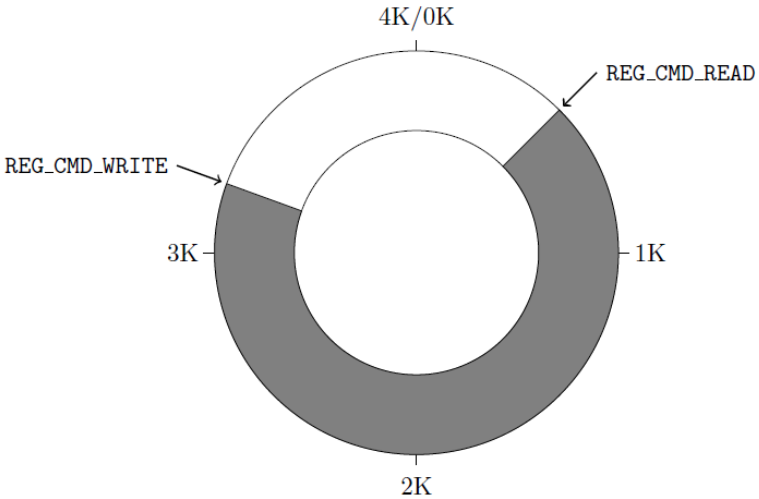
The value of *y* is part of the graphics context

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5 Coprocessor Engine

5.1 Command FIFO

The coprocessor engine is fed via a 4K byte **FIFO** called **RAM_CMD**. The MCU writes coprocessor commands or display list commands into the **FIFO**, and the coprocessor engine reads and executes the commands. The MCU updates the register **REG_CMD_WRITE** to indicate that there are new commands in the **FIFO**, and the coprocessor engine updates **REG_CMD_READ** after the commands have been executed. Therefore, when **REG_CMD_WRITE** is equal to **REG_CMD_READ**, it indicates the **FIFO** is empty and all the commands are executed without error.



To compute the free space, the MCU can apply the following formula:

```
fullness = (REG_CMD_WRITE - REG_CMD_READ) mod 4096
free space = (4096 - 4) -fullness;
```

This calculation does not report 4096 bytes of free space, to prevent completely wrapping the circular buffer and making it appear empty.

If enough space is available in the FIFO, the MCU writes the commands at the appropriate location in the **FIFO**, and then updates REG_CMD_WRITE. To simplify the MCU code, **EVE** automatically wraps continuous writes from the top address (**RAM_CMD** + 4095) back to the bottom address (**RAM_CMD** + 0) if the starting address of a write transfer is within **RAM_CMD**.

FIFO entries are always 4 bytes wide – it is an error for either **REG_CMD_READ** or **REG_CMD_WRITE** to have a value that is not a multiple of 4 bytes. Each command issued to the coprocessor engine may take 1 or more words: the length depends on the command itself, and any appended data. Some commands are followed by variable-length data, so the command size may not be a multiple of 4 bytes. In this case the coprocessor engine ignores the extra 1, 2 or 3 bytes and continues reading the next command at the following 4 byte boundary.

To offload work from the MCU for checking the free space in the circular buffer, **EVE** offers a pair of registers **REG_CMDB_SPACE** and **REG_CMDB_WRITE**. It enables the MCU to write commands and data to the coprocessor in a bulk transfer, without computing the free space in the circular buffer and increasing the address. As long as the amount of data to be transferred is less than the value in the register **REG_CMDB_SPACE**, the MCU is able to safely write all the data to **REG_CMDB_WRITE** in one write transfer. All writes to **REG_CMDB_WRITE** are appended to the command **FIFO** and may be of any length that is a multiple of 4 bytes. To determine the free space of **FIFO,** reading **REG_CMDB_SPACE** and checking if it is equal to 4092 is easier and faster than comparing **REG_CMD_WRITE** and **REG_CMD_READ**.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.2 Widgets

The Coprocessor engine provides pre-defined widgets for users to construct screen designs easily. The picture below illustrates the commands to render widgets and effects.

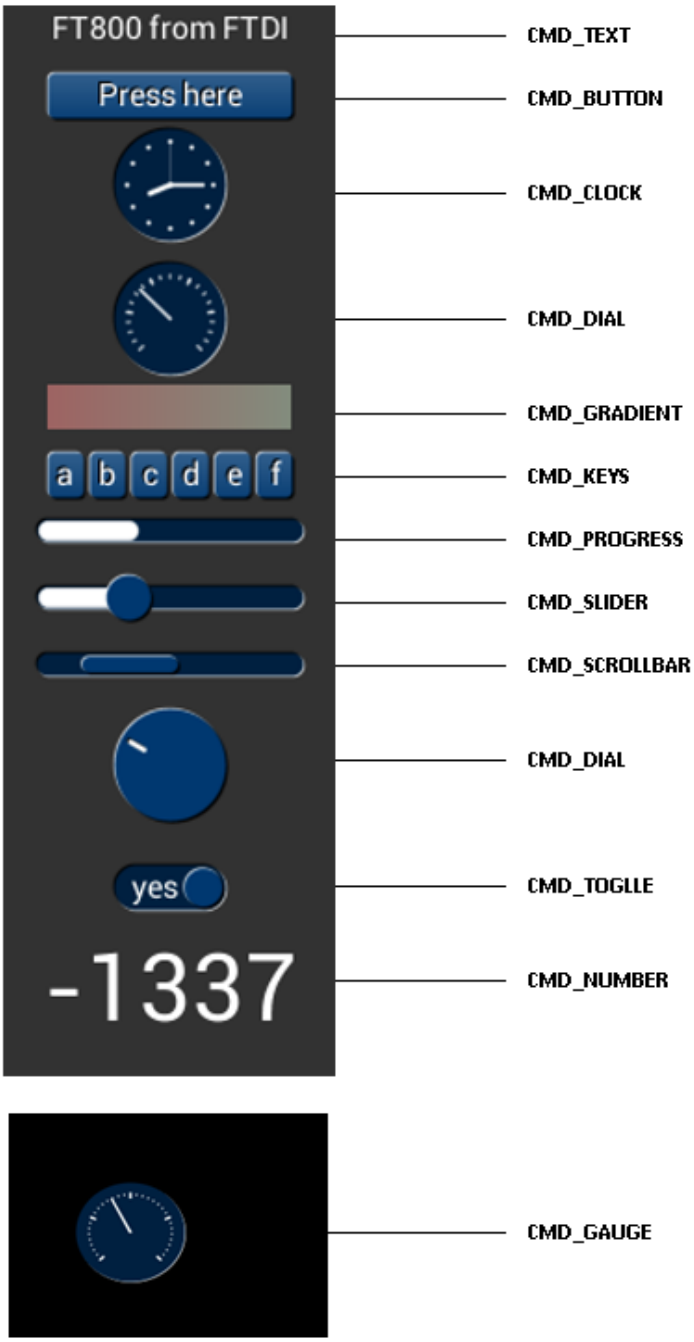


Figure 3 – Widget List

5.2.1 Common Physical Dimensions

This section contains the common physical dimensions of the widgets, unless it is specified in the widget introduction.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

- All rounded corners have a radius that is computed from the font used for the widget (curvature of lowercase 'o' character).

  *Radius = font height * 3 / 16*

- All 3D shadows are drawn with:
  (1) Highlight offsets 0.5 pixels above and left of the object
  (2) Shadow offsets 1.0 pixel below and right of the object.

- For widgets such as progress bar, scrollbar and slider, the output will be a vertical widget in the case where width and height parameters are of same value.

5.2.2 Color Settings

Coprocessor engine widgets are drawn with the color designated by the precedent commands: **CMD_FGCOLOR**, **CMD_BGCOLOR** and **COLOR_RGB**. The coprocessor engine will determine to render the different areas of the widgets in different colors according to these commands.

Usually, **CMD_FGCOLOR** affects the interaction area of coprocessor engine widgets if they are designed for interactive UI elements, for example, **CMD_BUTTON**, **CMD_DIAL**. **CMD_BGCOLOR** applies the background color of widgets with the color specified. Please see the table below for more details.

Widget	CMD_FGCOLOR	CMD_BGCOLOR	COLOR_RGB
CMD_TEXT	NO	NO	YES
CMD_BUTTON	YES	NO	YES(label)
CMD_GAUGE	NO	YES	YES(needle and mark)
CMD_KEYS	YES	NO	YES(text)
CMD_PROGRESS	NO	YES	YES
CMD_SCROLLBAR	YES(Inner bar)	YES(Outer bar)	NO
CMD_SLIDER	YES(Knob)	YES(Right bar of knob)	YES(Left bar of knob)
CMD_DIAL	YES(Knob)	NO	YES(Marker)
CMD_TOGGLE	YES(Knob)	YES(Bar)	YES(Text)
CMD_NUMBER	NO	NO	YES
CMD_CALIBRATE	YES(Animating dot)	YES(Outer dot)	NO
CMD_SPINNER	NO	NO	YES

Table 22 – Widgets Color Setup Table

5.2.3 Caveat

The behavior of widgets is not defined if the parameter values are out of the valid range.

5.3 Interaction with RAM_DL

If the coprocessor command is to generate respective display list commands, the coprocessor engine will write them to **RAM_DL**. The current write location in RAM_DL is held in the register **REG_CMD_DL**. Whenever the coprocessor engine writes a word to the display list, it increments the register **REG_CMD_DL**. The special command **CMD_DLSTART** sets **REG_CMD_DL** to zero, for the start of a new display list.

All display list commands can also be written to command **FIFO**. The coprocessor engine has the intelligence to differentiate and copy them into the current display list location specified by **REG_CMD_DL**. For example, the following code snippet writes a small display list:

```
cmd(CMD_DLSTART); // start a new display list
cmd(CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(255, 100, 100)); // set clear color
cmd(CLEAR(1, 1, 1)); // clear screen

cmd(DISPLAY()); // display
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Of course, this display list could have been written directly to RAM_DL. The advantage of this technique is that you can mix low-level operations and high level coprocessor engine commands in a single stream:

```
cmd(CMD_DLSTART);                          // start a new display list
cmd(CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(255, 100, 100));       // set clear color
cmd(CLEAR(1, 1, 1));                 // clear screen
cmd_button(20, 20,                   // x, y
           60, 60,                   // width, height in pixels
           30,                       // font 30
            0,                       // default options
           "OK!");                   // Label of button

cmd(DISPLAY());                      // Mark the end of display list
```

5.3.1 Synchronization between MCU & Coprocessor Engine

At some points, it is necessary to wait until the coprocessor engine has processed all outstanding commands. When the coprocessor engine completes the last outstanding command in the command buffer, it raises the **INT_CMDEMPTY** interrupt. Another approach to detecting synchronization is that the MCU can poll **REG_CMD_READ** until it is equal to **REG_CMD_WRITE**.

One situation that requires synchronization is to read the value of **REG_CMD_DL**, when the MCU needs to do direct writes into the display list. In this situation the MCU should wait until the coprocessor engine is idle before reading **REG_CMD_DL**.

5.4 ROM and RAM Fonts

Fonts in **EVE** are treated as a set of bitmap-graphics with metrics block indexed by handles from 0 to 31. The following commands are using fonts:

- **CMD_BUTTON**
- **CMD_KEYS**
- **CMD_TOGGLE**
- **CMD_TEXT**
- **CMD_NUMBER**

For any EVE series Ics **prior to** BT81X Series, only **ASCII** characters are possible to be displayed by the commands above. There is one font metrics block associated with each font, which is called "legacy font metrics block" below. With it, up to 128 characters for each font are ready to be used. In BT81X Series, extended font metrics block is introduced to support a full range of **Unicode** characters with **UTF-8** coding points (note: the CMD_KEYS command does not support Unicode characters).

5.4.1 Legacy Font Metrics Block

For each font, there is one 148-bytes font metrics block associated with it.

The format of the 148-bytes font metrics block is as below:

Address	Size	Value	Description
p + 0	128	Width	width of each font character, in pixels
p + 128	4	Format	bitmap format as defined in **BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT,** except **TEXTVGA**,**TEXT8X8**, **BARGRAPH** and **PALETTED** formats.
P + 132	4	line stride	font bitmap line stride, in bytes
p + 136	4	pixel width	font screen width, in pixels
p + 140	4	pixel height	font screen height, in pixels
p + 144	4	Gptr	pointer to glyph data in memory

Table 23 – Legacy Font Metrics Block

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

For ROM fonts, these blocks are located in built-in **ROM**, in an array of length 19. The address of this array is held in ROM location **ROM_FONTROOT**.

For custom fonts, these blocks shall be located in **RAM_G**.

5.4.2 Example to find the width of character

To find the width of character 'g' (ASCII 0x67) in ROM font 34:

read 32-bit pointer *p* from **ROM_FONTROOT**

widths = *p* + (148 * (34 – 16)) (table starts at font 16)

read byte from memory at widths[0x67]

5.4.3 Extended Font Metrics Block

The extended font metrics block is a new feature introduced in **BT81X** series, which can handle fonts with a full range of **Unicode** code points. It shall reside at **RAM_G**.

The font block is variable-sized, depending on the number of characters.

Address	Size	Value	Description
p + 0	4	signature	Must be **0x0100AAFF**
p + 4	4	size	Total size of the font block, in bytes
p + 8	4	format	Bitmap format, as defined in **BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT,** except TextVGA,Text8x8, BarGraph and Paletted formats.
P + 12	4	swizzle	Bitmap swizzle value, see **BITMAP_SWIZZLE**
p + 16	4	layout_width	Font bitmap line stride, in bytes
p + 20	4	layout_height	Font bitmap height, in pixels
p + 24	4	pixel_width	Font screen width, in pixels
p + 28	4	pixel_height	Font screen height, in pixels
p + 32	4	start_of_Graphic_data	Pointer to font graphic data in memory, including flash.
P + 36	4	number_of_characters	Total number of characters in font: N (multiple of 128)
p + 40	$4 \times [N/128]$	gptr	Offsets to glyph data
$p + 40 + 4 \times [N/128]$	$4 \times [N/128]$	wptr	Offsets to width data
$p + 40 + 8 \times [N/128]$	N	width_data	Width data, one byte per character

Table 24 – Extended Font Metrics Block

The table gptr contains offsets to graphic data. There is one offset for every 128 code points. The offsets are all relative to the start_of_graphic_data. The start_of_graphic_data may be an address in **RAM_G** or flash, specified in the same way as **BITMAP_SOURCE**. Similarly the table wptr contains offsets to width data, but the offsets are relative to p, the start of the font block itself. So to find the bitmap address and width of a code point *cp*, please refer to the pseudo-code below:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
struct xfont {
    uint32_t signature,
    uint32_t size,
    uint32_t format,
    uint32_t swizzle,
    uint32_t layout_width,
    uint32_t layout_height,
    uint32_t pixel_width,
    uint32_t pixel_height,
    uint32_t start_of_graphic_data;
    uint32_t number_of_characters;
    uint32_t gptr[N/128];
    uint32_t wptr[N/128];
    uint8_t  width_data[N];
};

uint32_t cp_address(xfont *xf, uint32_t cp)
{
    uint32_t bytes_per_glyph;
    bytes_per_glyph = xf->layout_width * xf->layout_height;

    if (xf->start_of_graphic_data >= 0x800000)
        //if the graphic data is in flash
        return (xf->start_of_graphic_data +
            (xf->gptr[cp / 128] + bytes_per_glyph * (cp % 128)) / 32);
    else
        //if the graphic data is in RAM_G
        return (xf->start_of_graphic_data +
            (xf->gptr[cp / 128] + bytes_per_glyph * (cp % 128)));
}

uint8_t cp_width(xfont *xf, uint32_t cp)
{
    return *(
        (uint8_t*)xf +
        xf->wptr[cp / 128] + (cp % 128));

}
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Note that the structure above is shown to illustrate the fields of the xfont block clearly. A code implementation of the above structure could use the following defines. The defines help to ensure that the structure can be compiled without errors due to the variable sizes of the last three entries in the structure.

```
#define XF_GPTR(xf)   ( (unsigned int*)&(((int*)xf)[10]) )
#define XF_WPTR(xf)   ( (unsigned int*)&(((char*)xf)[40 + 4 * \
                      (xf->number_of_characters / 128)]))
#define XF_WIDTH(xf)  ( (unsigned char*)&(((char*)xf)[0]))

typedef struct
{
       uint32_t signature;// Must be 0x0100AAFF
       uint32_t size;     // Total size of the font block, in bytes
       uint32_t format;   // Bitmap format
       uint32_t swizzle;  // Bitmap swizzle value
       uint32_t layout_width; // Font bitmap line stride, in bytes
       uint32_t layout_height;// Font bitmap height, in pixels
       uint32_t pixel_width;  // Font screen width, in pixels
       uint32_t pixel_height; // Font screen height, in pixels
       uint32_t start_of_graphic_data;// Pointer to font graphic data
       uint32_t number_of_characters; // Total number of characters
                                      // in font: N (multiple of 128)

} XFONT_EXTENDED;


uint32_t cp_address(const XFONT_EXTENDED * xf, uint32_t cp)
{
    uint32_t bytes_per_glyph;
    bytes_per_glyph = xf->layout_width * xf->layout_height;

    if (xf->start_of_graphic_data >= 0x800000)
        //if the graphic data is in flash
        return (xf->start_of_graphic_data +
            (XF_GPTR(xf)[cp / 128] + bytes_per_glyph * (cp % 128)) / 32);
    else
        //if the graphic data is in RAM_G
        return (xf->start_of_graphic_data +
            (XF_GPTR(xf)[cp / 128] + bytes_per_glyph * (cp % 128)));
}

uint8_t cp_width(const XFONT_EXTENDED * xf, uint32_t cp)
{
    uint32_t offset = XF_WPTR(xf)[cp / 128] + (cp % 128);
    return XF_WIDTH(xf)[offset];
}
```

5.4.4 ROM Fonts (Built-in Fonts)

In total, there are 19 **ROM** fonts numbered from 16 to 34.

By default, **ROM** fonts 16 to 31 are attached to bitmap handles 16 to 31 and users may use these fonts by specifying bitmap handle from 16 to 31.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

To use ROM font 32 to 34, the user needs to call CMD_ROMFONT to assign the bitmap handle with the ROM font number. Refer to CMD_ROMFONT for more details. To reset ROM fonts to default bitmap handle, use CMD_RESETFONTS.

For **ROM** fonts 16 to 34 (except 17 and 19), each font includes 95 printable **ASCII** characters from 0x20 to 0x7E inclusive. All these characters are indexed by its corresponding **ASCII** value. For ROM fonts 17 and 19, each font includes 127 printable **ASCII** characters from 0x80 to 0xFF, inclusive. All these characters are indexed using value from 0x0 to 0x7F, i.e., code 0 maps to **ASCII** character 0x80 and code 0x7F maps to **ASCII** character 0xFF. Users are required to handle this mapping manually.
The picture below shows the **ROM** font effects:

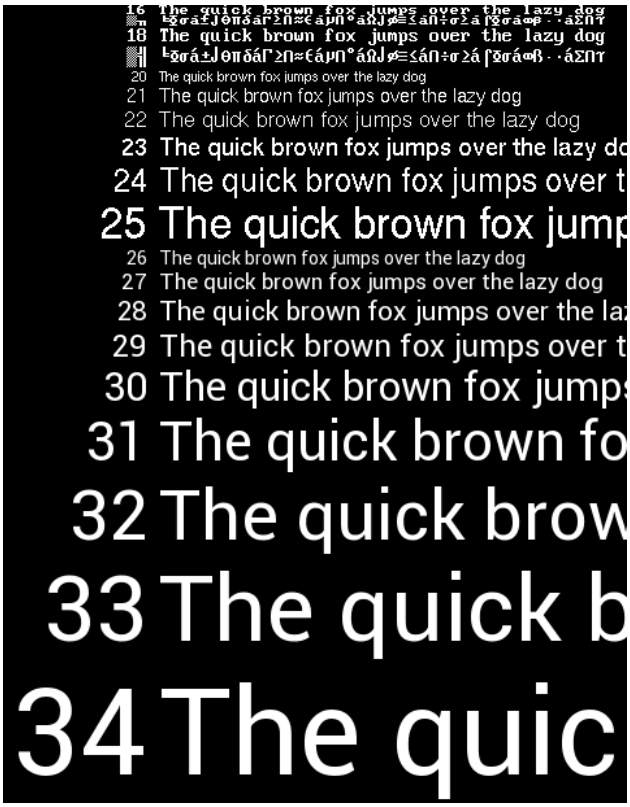


Figure 4 – ROM Font List

5.4.5 Using Custom Font

Users can define custom fonts by following the steps below:

- Select a bitmap handle 0-31
- Load the font bitmap(glyph) into **RAM_G** or **flash memory**
- Create or load a font metrics block in **RAM_G**

Then either:

1. Set up bitmap parameters by using display list command:
   - **BITMAP_SOURCE,**
   - **BITMAP_LAYOUT/BITMAP_LAYOUT_H, BITMAP_SIZE/BITMAP_SIZE _H**
   - **BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT** if font is based on ASTC format bitmaps

   or:

   - using the coprocessor command **CMD_SETBITMAP.**

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

2. Use command **CMD_SETFONT** to register the new font with the handle 0-31

or:

- Use command **CMD_SETFONT2** to register the new font with the handle 0-31. (**Recommended method**)

After this setup, the font's handle 0-31 can be used as a font argument of coprocessor commands.

5.5 Animation support

Based on **ASTC** format of bitmap data, BT81X can play back the animation efficiently with minimum **MCU** effort and memory usage. To achieve that, the animation data and object are defined. The utility has been provided to generate these animation assets.

The animation data consists of a sequence of display list fragments. Each fragment must be 64-byte aligned, and has a length that is a multiple of 4. The animation object is also 64-byte aligned, and contains:

- a signature
- a frame count
- an array of references to the display list fragments.

```
// A fragment is: a pointer to display list data, and a size
struct fragment {
    uint32_t nbytes; // must be 4-byte aligned
    uint32_t ptr;    // must be 64-byte aligned
};

struct animation_header {
    uint32_t signature;  // always ANIM_SIGNATURE (0xAAAA0100)
    uint32_t num_frames;
    struct fragment table[num_frames];

};
```

Note that a fragment can appear multiple times in a table, for example for animation that is slower than the frame rate. Fragments contain regular display list commands. The fragment code is appended to the display list as follows in order that the fragment can:

1. change graphics state,
2. load and use any bitmaps using the current bitmap handle.

Typically the bitmap data for a fragment also resides in flash and a typical display list to show the fragment is as below:

```
SAVE_CONTEXT
BITMAP_HANDLE(scratch_handle)
<fragment>
RESTORE_CONTEXT
```

Animations can run in channels. A channel keeps track of the animation state. There are 32 animation channels. Each channel can handle one animation. The animation commands are:

- **CMD_ANIMFRAME** - render one frame of an animation
- **CMD_ANIMSTART** - start an animation
- **CMD_ANIMSTOP** - stop animation
- **CMD_ANIMXY** - set the (x; y) coordinates of an animation

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

- **CMD_ANIMDRAW** - draw active animations

All animation functions accept a channel number 0-31.Register **REG_ANIM_ACTIVE** to indicate the state of animation channels.

In BT815/6, animation objects and data are only limited to be in flash and requires flash in the fast/full mode when it is running. In BT817/8, animation objects and data is also allowed to be in **RAM_G**. Therefore, there are the following commands introduced:

- **CMD_ANIMFRAMERAM** - render one frame of an animation in **RAM_G**
- **CMD_ANIMSTARTRAM** - start an animation in **RAM_G**

In addition, another command **CMD_RUNANIM** is also introduced in **BT817/8** to simplify the playing back animation.

Examples 1:

```
/***
play back an animation once in flash
***/

//set up an channel 1
cmd_animstart(1,4096, ANIM_ONCE);
cmd_animxy(400, 240); //The center of animation

//draw each frame in the animation object in a while loop.
while (0 == rd32 (REG_DLSWAP)) {
      cmd_dlstart();
      cmd_animdraw();

      cmd_swap();

      if (0 == rd32(REG_ANIM_ACTIVE))
         break;

}

cmd_animstop(1);
```

Examples 2:

```
/***
play back the animation from frame to frame using cmd_animframe.
FRAME_COUNT is the number of frames to be rendered.
***/
for (int i = 0; i < FRAME_COUNT; i++)
{
      cmd_dlstart();
      cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
      cmd_animframe(400,240, 4096, i); //draw the ith frame.
      cmd(DISPLAY());
      cmd_swap();

}
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.6 String Formatting

Some coprocessor commands, such as **CMD_TEXT,CMD_BUTTON,CMD_TOGGLE,** accept a zero-terminated string argument. This string may contain UTF-8 characters, if the selected font contains the appropriate code points.

If the **OPT_FORMAT** option is given in the command, then the string is interpreted as a printf-style format string. The supported formatting is a subset of standard C99. The output string may be up to 256 bytes in length. Arguments to the format string follow the string and its padding. They are always 32-bit, and aligned to 32-bit boundaries. So for example the command:

```
cmd_text(0, 0, 26, OPT_FORMAT, "%d", 237);
```

Should be serialized as:

Offset	Size (in bytes)	Value	Remarks
0	4	0xFFFFFF0C	**CMD_TEXT**
4	2	0	X coordinate
6	2	0	Y coordinate
8	2	26	Font handle
10	2	OPT_FORMAT	Options
12	1	'%'	Format specifier
13	1	'd'	Conversion specifier
14	1	0	Padding bytes for 32 bits alignment
15	1	0	
16	4	237	Integer

The format string is composed of zero or more directives: ordinary characters (not %), which are copied unchanged to the output stream; and conversion specifications, each of which results in fetching zero or more subsequent arguments from the input stream. Each conversion specification is introduced by the character specifier. In between there may be (in this order) zero or more flags, an optional minimum field width and an optional precision.

5.6.1 The Flag Characters

The character % is followed by zero or more of the following flags:

Flag	Description
0	The value should be zero padded. For d, I, u, o, x, and X conversions, the converted value is padded on the left with zeros rather than blanks. If the 0 and–- flags both appear, the 0 flag is ignored. For other conversions, the behavior is undefined.
-	The converted value is to be left adjusted on the field boundary. (The default is right justification.) The converted value is padded on the right with blanks, rather than on the left with blanks or zeros
' ' (a space)	A blank should be left before a positive number (or empty string) produced by a signed conversion
+	A sign (+ or -) should always be placed before a number produced by a signed conversion. By default a sign is used only for negative numbers.

5.6.2 The Field Width

An optional decimal digit string (with nonzero first digit) specifying a minimum field width. If the converted value has fewer characters than the field width, it will be padded with spaces on the left (or right, if the left-adjustment flag has been given). Instead of a decimal digit string one may

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

write '*' to specify that the field width is given in the next argument. A negative field width is taken as a '-' flag followed by a positive field width. In no case does a nonexistent or small field width cause truncation of a field; if the result of a conversion is wider than the field width, the field is expanded to contain the conversion result.

5.6.3 The Precision

An optional precision, in the form of a period ('.') followed by an optional decimal digit string. Instead of a decimal digit string one may write '*' to specify that the field width is given in the next argument. If the precision is given as just '.', the precision is taken to be zero. This gives the minimum number of digits to appear for d, i, u, o, x, and X conversions, the number of digits to appear after the radix character for a, A, e, E, f, and F conversions, the maximum number of significant digits for g and G conversions, or the maximum number of characters to be printed from a string for s and S conversions.

5.6.4 The Conversion Specifier

A character that specifies the type of conversion to be applied. The conversion specifiers and their meanings are:

Specifiers	Meaning
d,i	The integer argument is converted to signed decimal notation. The precision, if any, gives the minimum number of digits that must appear; if the converted value requires fewer digits, it is padded on the left with zeros
u, o, x, X	The unsigned integer argument is converted to unsigned octal (o), unsigned decimal (u), or unsigned hexadecimal (x and X) notation. The letters abcdef are used for x conversions; the letters ABCDEF are used for X conversions. The precision, if any, gives the minimum number of digits that must appear; if the converted value requires fewer digits, it is padded on the left with zeros.
c (lower case)	The integer argument is treated as a **Unicode** code point, and encoded as **UTF-8**
s (lower case)	**The argument is expected to be an address of RAM_G storing an array of characters.** Characters from the array are written up to (but not including) a terminating null byte; if a precision is specified, no more than the number specified are written. If a precision is given, no null byte need be present; if the precision is not specified, or is greater than the size of the array, the array must contain a terminating null byte.
%	A '%' is written. No argument is converted. The complete conversion specification is '%%'.

Table 25 – String Format Specifier

Examples:

Format string	Output	Assumption
"%3d%% complete", c	51% complete	int c = 51
"base address %06x", a	base address 12a000	int a = 0x12a000
"%+5.3umV", mv	+1947 mV	unsigned int mv = 1947
"Temp %d%.1d degree", t / 10, t % 10	Temp 68.0 degrees	int c = 680
"%s %d times", **RAM_G** + 4, nTimes	Hello 5 times	"**RAM_G**+4" is the starting address of the string int nTimes = 5

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.7 Coprocessor Faults

Some commands can cause coprocessor faults. These faults arise because the coprocessor cannot continue. For example:

- An invalid JPEG is supplied to **CMD_LOADIMAGE**
- An invalid data stream is supplied to **CMD_INFLATE/CMD_INFLATE2**
- An attempt is made to write more than 2048 instructions into a display list

In the fault condition, the coprocessor:

1. writes a 128-byte diagnostic string to memory starting at **RAM_ERR_REPORT.**
2. sets **REG_CMD_READ** to 0xfff (an illegal value because all command buffer data is 32-bit aligned),
3. raises the **INT_CMDEMPTY** interrupt
4. stops accepting new commands

The diagnostic string gives details of the problem, and the command that triggered it. The string is up to 128 bytes long, including the terminating 0x00. It always starts with the text "ERROR"" For example, after a fault the memory buffer might contain:

```
45 52 52 4f 52 3a 20 69 6c 6c 65 67 61 6c 20 6f  |ERROR: illegal o|
70 74 69 6f 6e 20 69 6e 20 63 6d 64 5f 69 6e 66  |ption in cmd_inf|
6c 61 74 65 32 28 29 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |late2().........|
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  |................|
```

The possible errors are:

Error string	Remarks
display list overflow	more than 2048 drawing operations in the display list
illegal font or bitmap handle	valid handles are 0-31
out of channel	The animation channels are used up
uninitialized font	font should be set up with **CMD_ROMFONT** or **CMD_SETFONT2**
illegal alignment	flash commands only support certain alignments
illegal option	a command''s option(parameter) was not recognized
invalid animation	the animation object or frame is not valid
invalid animation channel	animation channel number is not valid
invalid base	a number base was given outside the range 2-36
unsupported JPEG	the **JPEG** image is not supported (e.g. progressive)
invalid size	a radius, width, or height was negative or zero
corrupted JPEG	the **JPEG** image data is corrupted
unsupported PNG	the **PNG** image is not supported
corrupted PNG	the **PNG** image data is corrupted
image type not recognized	the image is not a **PNG** or **JPG**
display list must be empty	**CMD_CLEARCACHE** was called with a non-empty display list
unknown bitmap format	**CMD_SETBITMAP** was called with a unknown bitmap format
corrupted DEFLATE data	the **DEFLATE** data is corrupted
corrupted AVI	the **AVI** data is corrupted

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

invalid format character	an invalid character appeared in a format
invalid format string	the format conversion specifier was not found
format buffer overflow	the format output buffer used more than 256 bytes

Table 26 – Coprocessor Faults Strings

When the host MCU encounters the fault condition, it can recover as follows:

1. Read **REG_COPRO_PATCH_PTR** into a local variable "*patch_address*".
2. Set **REG_CPURESET** to 1, to hold the coprocessor engine in the reset condition
3. Set **REG_CMD_READ** , **REG_CMD_WRITE** , **REG_CMD_DL** to zero
4. Set **REG_CPURESET** to 0, to restart the coprocessor engine
5. Write the variable "*patch_address*" of step 1 to **REG_COPRO_PATCH_PTR.**
6. To enable coprocessor access flash content, send commands "**CMD_FLASHATTACH**" following "**CMD_FLASHFAST**". It will make sure flash enters full-speed mode.
7. Restore **REG_PCLK** to the original value if the error string is '*display list must be empty*' because **REG_PCLK** is set to zero when that specific error takes place.

5.8 Coprocessor Graphics State

The coprocessor engine maintains a small amount of internal states for graphics drawing. This state is set to the default at coprocessor engine reset, and by **CMD_COLDSTART**. The state values are not affected by **CMD_DLSTART** or **CMD_SWAP**, so an application need only set them once at startup.

State	Default	Commands
background color	*dark blue (0x002040)*	**CMD_BGCOLOR**
foreground color	*light blue (0x003870)*	**CMD_FGCOLOR**
gradient color	*white (0xFFFFFF)*	**CMD_GRADCOLOR**
Spinner	*None*	**CMD_SPINNER**
object trackers	*all disabled*	**CMD_TRACK**
interrupt timer	*None*	**CMD_INTERRUPT**
bitmap transform matrix: $\begin{bmatrix} A & B & C \\ D & E & F \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.0 & 0.0 & 0.0 \\ 0.0 & 1.0 & 0.0 \end{bmatrix}$	**CMD_LOADIDENTITY, CMD_TRANSLATE, CMD_SCALE, CMD_ROTATE, CMD_ROTATEAROUND**
Scratch bitmap handle	*15*	**CMD_SETSCRATCH**
Font pointers 0-15	*Undefined*	**CMD_SETFONT, CMD_SETFONT2**
Font pointer 16-31	*ROM fonts 16-31*	**CMD_SETFONT, CMD_SETFONT2, CMD_ROMFONT**
base of number	*10*	**CMD_SETBASE**
Media FIFO	*Address is zero and length is zero*	**CMD_MIDEAFIFO,**

Table 27 – Coprocessor Engine Graphics State

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.9 Parameter OPTION

The following table defines the parameter "OPTION" mentioned in this chapter.

Name	Value	Description	Commands
OPT_3D	0	3D effect	**CMD_BUTTON, CMD_CLOCK, CMD_KEYS, CMD_GAUGE, CMD_SLIDER, CMD_DIAL, CMD_TOGGLE, CMD_PROGRESS, CMD_SCROLLBAR**
OPT_RGB565	0	Decode the source image to RGB565 format	**CMD_LOADIMAGE**
OPT_MONO	1	Decode the source JPEG image to L8 format, i.e., monochrome	**CMD_LOADIMAGE**
OPT_NODL	2	No display list commands generated	**CMD_LOADIMAGE**
OPT_FLAT	256	No 3D effect	**CMD_BUTTON, CMD_CLOCK, CMD_KEYS, CMD_GAUGE, CMD_SLIDER, CMD_DIAL, CMD_TOGGLE, CMD_PROGRESS, CMD_SCROLLBAR**
OPT_SIGNED	256	The number is treated as a 32 bit signed integer	**CMD_NUMBER**
OPT_CENTERX	512	Horizontally-centred style	**CMD_KEYS, CMD_TEXT, CMD_NUMBER**
OPT_CENTERY	1024	Vertically centred style	**CMD_KEYS, CMD_TEXT, CMD_NUMBER**
OPT_CENTER	1536	horizontally and vertically centred style	**CMD_KEYS, CMD_TEXT, CMD_NUMBER**
OPT_RIGHTX	2048	Right justified style	**CMD_KEYS, CMD_TEXT, CMD_NUMBER**
OPT_NOBACK	4096	No background drawn	**CMD_CLOCK, CMD_GAUGE**
OPT_FILL	8192	Breaks the text at spaces into multiple lines, with maximum width set by CMD_FILLWIDTH.	**CMD_BUTTON, CMD_TEXT**
OPT_FLASH	64	Fetch the data from flash memory	**CMD_INFLATE2, CMD_LOADIMAGE, CMD_PLAYVIDEO,**
OPT_FORMAT	4096	Flag of string formatting	**CMD_TEXT, CMD_BUTTON, CMD_TOGGLE**
OPT_NOTICKS	8192	No Ticks	**CMD_CLOCK, CMD_GAUGE**
OPT_NOHM	16384	No hour and minute hands	**CMD_CLOCK**
OPT_NOPOINTER	16384	No pointer	**CMD_GAUGE**
OPT_NOSECS	32768	No second hands	**CMD_CLOCK**
OPT_NOHANDS	49152	No hands	**CMD_CLOCK**
OPT_NOTEAR	4	Synchronize video updates to the display blanking interval, avoiding	**CMD_PLAYVIDEO**

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Name	Value	Description	Commands
		horizontal "tearing" artefacts.	
OPT_FULLSCREEN	8	Zoom the video so that it fills as much of the screen as possible.	**CMD_PLAYVIDEO**
OPT_MEDIAFIFO	16	source video/image/compressed(zlib) data from the defined media FIFO	**CMD_PLAYVIDEO** **CMD_VIDEOFRAME** **CMD_LOADIMAGE** **CMD_INFLATE2**
OPT_OVERLAY	128	Append the video bitmap to an existing display list	**CMD_PLAYVIDEO**
OPT_SOUND	32	Decode the audio data	**CMD_PLAYVIDEO**
OPT_DITHER	256	Enable dithering feature in decoding PNG process	**CMD_LOADIMAGE**

Table 28 – Parameter OPTION Definition

5.10 Resources Utilization

The coprocessor engine does not change the state of the graphics engine. That is, graphics states such as color and line width are not to be changed by the coprocessor engine.

However, the widgets do reserve some hardware resources, which the user must take into account:

- Bitmap handle 15 is used by the 3D-effect buttons, keys and gradient, unless it is set to another bitmap handle using **CMD_SETSCRATCH**.
- One graphics context is used by objects, and the effective stack depth for **SAVE_CONTEXT** and **RESTORE_CONTEXT** commands is 3 levels.

5.11 Command list

In BT817/8, coprocessor adds a new feature "command list", which enables user to construct a series of coprocessor command or display list at **RAM_G.** There are the following new commands to facilitate:

- **CMD_NEWLIST**
- **CMD_CALLLIST**
- **CMD_RETURN**
- **CMD_ENDLIST**

The examples can be found in the sections of the commands above.

5.12 Command Groups

These commands begin and finish the display list:

- **CMD_DLSTART**-- start a new display list
- **CMD_SWAP**-- swap the current display list

Commands to draw graphics objects:

- **CMD_TEXT**-- draw a **UTF-8** text string
- **CMD_BUTTON--** draw a button with a **UTF-8** label.
- **CMD_CLOCK**-- draw an analog clock
- **CMD_BGCOLOR**-- set the background color
- **CMD_FGCOLOR**-- set the foreground color
- **CMD_GRADCOLOR** – set up the highlight color used in 3D effects for **CMD_BUTTON** and **CMD_KEYS**
- **CMD_GAUGE**-- draw a gauge
- **CMD_GRADIENT**-- draw a smooth color gradient
- **CMD_KEYS**-- draw a row of keys
- **CMD_PROGRESS**-- draw a progress bar

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

- **CMD_SCROLLBAR**-- draw a scroll bar
- **CMD_SLIDER**-- draw a slider
- **CMD_DIAL**-- draw a rotary dial control
- **CMD_TOGGLE**-- draw a toggle switch with **UTF-8** labels
- **CMD_NUMBER**-- draw a decimal number
- **CMD_SETBASE**-- set the base for number output
- **CMD_FILLWIDTH**-- set the text fill width

Commands to operate on **RAM_G**:

- **CMD_MEMCRC**-- compute a **CRC-32** for **RAM_G**
- **CMD_MEMZERO**-- write zero to **RAM_G**
- **CMD_MEMSET**-- fill **RAM_G** with a byte value
- **CMD_MEMWRITE**-- write bytes into **RAM_G**
- **CMD_MEMCPY**-- copy a block of **RAM_G**
- **CMD_APPEND**-- append more commands to display list

Commands for loading data into **RAM_G**:

- **CMD_INFLATE** - decompress data into **RAM_G**
- **CMD_INFLATE2 -** decompress data into **RAM_G** with more options
- **CMD_LOADIMAGE**-- load a JPEG/PNG image into **RAM_G**
- **CMD_MEDIAFIFO--** set up a streaming media FIFO in **RAM_G**
- **CMD_VIDEOFRAME –** load video frame from **RAM_G** or flash memory.

Commands for setting the bitmap transform matrix:

- **CMD_LOADIDENTITY**-- set the current matrix to identity
- **CMD_TRANSLATE**-- apply a translation to the current matrix
- **CMD_SCALE**-- apply a scale to the current matrix
- **CMD_ROTATE**-- apply a rotation to the current matrix
- **CMD_ROTATEAROUND**-- apply a rotation and scale around the specified pixel
- **CMD_SETMATRIX**-- write the current matrix as a bitmap transform
- **CMD_GETMATRIX**-- retrieves the current matrix coefficients

Commands for flash operation:

- **CMD_FLASHERASE** – Erase all of flash
- **CMD_FLASHWRITE** – Write data to flash
- **CMD_FLASHUPDATE** – write data to flash, erasing if necessary
- **CMD_FLASHDETACH** – detach from flash
- **CMD_FLASHATTACH** – attach to flash
- **CMD_FLASHFAST** – enter full-speed mode
- **CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL** –SPI bus: deselect device
- **CMD_FLASHTX** – SPI bus: write bytes
- **CMD_FLASHRX** – SPI bus: read bytes
- **CMD_CLEARCACHE** – clear the flash cache
- **CMD_FLASHSOURCE** – specify the flash source address for the following coprocessor commands
- **CMD_VIDEOSTARTF** – initialize video frame decoder
- **CMD_APPENDF** – Read data from flash to **RAM_DL**

Commands for video playback:

- **CMD_VIDEOSTART** – Initialize the video frame decoder
- **CMD_VIDEOSTARTF** –Initialize the video frame decoder for video data in flash
- **CMD_VIDEOFRAME** – Load video frame data
- **CMD_PLAYVIDEO--** play back motion-**JPEG** encoded AVI video

Commands for animation:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

- **CMD_ANIMFRAME** – render one frame of an animation
- **CMD_ANIMFRAMERAM** – render one frame in **RAM_G** of an animation
- **CMD_ANIMSTART** – start an animation
- **CMD_ANIMSTOP** – stop animation
- **CMD_ANIMXY** – set the (x,y) coordinates of an animation
- **CMD_ANIMDRAW** – draw active animation

Other commands:

- **CMD_COLDSTART**-- set coprocessor engine state to default values
- **CMD_INTERRUPT**-- trigger interrupt INT_CMDFLAG
- **CMD_REGREAD**-- read a register value
- **CMD_CALIBRATE**-- execute the touch screen calibration routine
- **CMD_ROMFONT** – load a ROM font into bitmap handle
- **CMD_SETROTATE**-- Rotate the screen and set up transform matrix accordingly
- **CMD_SETBITMAP** – Set up display list commands for specified bitmap
- **CMD_SPINNER**-- start an animated spinner
- **CMD_STOP**-- stop any spinner, screensaver or sketch
- **CMD_SCREENSAVER**-- start an animated screensaver
- **CMD_SKETCH**-- start a continuous sketch update
- **CMD_SNAPSHOT**-- take a snapshot of the current screen
- **CMD_SNAPSHOT2**-- take a snapshot of part of the current screen with more format option
- **CMD_LOGO**-- play device logo animation

5.13 CMD_APILEVEL

This command sets the API level used by the coprocessor.

C prototype

```
void cmd_apilevel( uint32_t level );
```

Parameter

level
API level to use. Level 1 is BT815 compatible, and is the default. Level 2 is BT817/8.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_APILEVEL (0xFFFF FF63)**
+4	level

Description

To use the BT817/8 specific commands or other improvement, level 2 has to be sent.

Example

```
//At startup, the API level is 1. To set it to 2:
cmd_apilevel(2);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.14 CMD_DLSTART

This command starts a new display list. When the coprocessor engine executes this command, it waits until the current display list is ready for writing, and then sets **REG_CMD_DL** to zero.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

C prototype

void cmd_dlstart( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_DLSTART (0xFFFF FF00)**

Examples

NA

5.15 CMD_INTERRUPT

This command is used to trigger Interrupt CMDFLAG. When the coprocessor engine executes this command, it triggers interrupt, which will set the bit field **CMDFLAG** of REG_INT_FLAGS, unless the corresponding bit in REG_INT_MASK is zero.

C prototype

void cmd_interrupt(uint32_t ms);

Parameters

ms
The delay before the interrupt triggers, in milliseconds. The interrupt is guaranteed not to fire before this delay. If ms are zero, the interrupt fires immediately.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_INTERRUPT(0xFFFF FF02)**
+4	ms

Examples

```
//To trigger an interrupt after a JPEG has finished loading:
cmd_loadimage();
//...
cmd_interrupt(0); // previous load image complete, trigger interrupt

//To trigger an interrupt in 0.5 seconds:
cmd_interrupt(500);

//...
```

5.16 CMD_COLDSTART

This command sets the coprocessor engine to default reset states.

C prototype

void cmd_coldstart( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_COLDSTART(0xFFFF FF32)**

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Examples

Change to a custom color scheme, and then restore the default colors:

```
cmd_fgcolor(0x00c040);
cmd_gradcolor(0x000000);
cmd_button( 2, 32, 76, 56, 26,0, "custom" );
cmd_coldstart();
cmd_button( 82, 32, 76, 56, 26,0, "default");
```

5.17 CMD_SWAP

This command is used to swap the current display list. When the coprocessor engine executes this command, it requests a display list swap immediately after the current display list is scanned out. Internally, the coprocessor engine implements this command by writing to **REG_DLSWAP** with **0x02**.

This coprocessor engine command will not generate any display list command into display list memory RAM_DL. It is expected to be used with **CMD_DLSTART** in pair**.**

C prototype

void cmd_swap( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SWAP(0xFFFF FF01)**

Examples

NA

5.18 CMD_APPEND

This command appends more commands resident in **RAM_G** to the current display list memory address where the offset is specified in **REG_CMD_DL**.

C prototype

```
void cmd_append(    uint32_t ptr,
                    uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

ptr
Starting address of source commands in RAM_G

num
Number of bytes to copy. This must be a multiple of 4.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_APPEND(0xFFFF FF1E)**
+4	ptr
+8	num

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Description
After appending is done, the coprocessor engine will increase the **REG_CMD_DL** by num to make sure the display list is in order.
Examples

```
cmd_dlstart();
cmd_append(0, 40); // copy 10 commands from main memory address 0
cmd(DISPLAY); // finish the display list
cmd_swap();
```

5.19 CMD_REGREAD

This command is used to read a register value.

C prototype

```
void cmd_regread( uint32_t ptr,
                  uint32_t result );
```

Parameters

ptr
Address of the register to be read

result
The register value which has been read from the ptr address . **OUTPUT** parameter.
Write a dummy 32-bit value 0x00000000 for this parameter and the Co-Processor will replace this value with the result after the command has been executed.
After execution, the host should then read the address of this parameter in **RAM_CMD** to get the result value.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_REGREAD(0xFFFF FF19)**
+4	ptr
+8	result

Examples

```
//To capture the exact time when a command completes:
uint16_t x = rd16(REG_CMD_WRITE);
cmd_regread(REG_CLOCK, 0);
//...

printf("%08x\n", rd32(RAM_CMD + (x + 8) % 4096));
```

5.20 CMD_MEMWRITE

This command writes the following bytes into the memory. This command can be used to set register values, or to update memory contents at specific times.

C prototype

```
void cmd_memwrite(   uint32_t ptr,
                     uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

ptr
The memory address to be written

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

num
Number of bytes to be written.

Description

The data byte should immediately follow in the command buffer. If the number of bytes is not a multiple of 4, then 1, 2 or 3 bytes should be appended to ensure 4-byte alignment of the next command, these padding bytes can have any value. The completion of this function can be detected when the value of **REG_CMD_READ** is equal to **REG_CMD_WRITE.**

Note: If using this command improperly, it may corrupt the memory.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_MEMWRITE(0xFFFF FF1A)**
+4	ptr
+8	num
+12 …n	$byte_0$ … $byte_n$

Examples

```
//To change the backlight brightness to 0x64 (half intensity) for a particular
screen shot:
//...
cmd_swap(); // finish the display list
cmd_dlstart(); // wait until after the swap
cmd_memwrite(REG_PWM_DUTY, 4); // write to the PWM_DUTY register
cmd(100);
```

5.21 CMD_INFLATE

This command is used to decompress the following compressed data into **RAM_G**. The data should have been compressed with the **DEFLATE** algorithm, e.g. with the **ZLIB** library. This is particularly useful for loading graphics data.

C prototype

void cmd_inflate(uint32_t ptr);

Parameters

ptr
Destination address in **RAM_G**. The data byte should immediately follow in the command buffer.

Description

If the number of bytes is not a multiple of 4, then 1, 2 or 3 bytes should be appended to ensure 4-byte alignment of the next command. These padding bytes can have any value

Command layout

+0	**CMD_INFLATE(0xFFFF FF22)**
+4	ptr
+8 …n	$byte_0$ … $byte_n$

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Examples
To load graphics data to main memory address 0x8000:

```
cmd_inflate(0x8000);
// zlib-compressed data follows
```

5.22 CMD_INFLATE2

This command is used to decompress the following compressed data into **RAM_G**. The data may be supplied in the command buffer, the media **FIFO**, or from flash memory. The data should have been compressed with the **DEFLATE** algorithm, e.g. with the **ZLIB** library. This is particularly useful for loading graphics data.

C prototype

```
void cmd_inflate2( uint32_t ptr,
                   uint32_t options );
```

Parameters

ptr
destination address to put the decompressed data.

options
If option **OPT_MEDIAFIFO** is given, the compressed data is sourced from the media **FIFO**. If option **OPT_FLASH** is given, then flash memory is the source. When flash is the source, call **CMD_FLASHSOURCE** before this command to specify the address. See CMD_FLASHSOURCE. Otherwise, giving **zero** value and the compressed data shall be followed immediately.

Description

If the number of bytes is not a multiple of 4, then 1, 2 or 3 bytes should be appended to ensure 4-byte alignment of the next command. These padding bytes can have any value.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_INFLATE2(0xFFFF FF50)**
+4	ptr
+8	options
+9….+n	$byte_1$…$byte_n$

5.23 CMD_LOADIMAGE

This command is used to load a JPEG or PNG image. Decompress the following **JPEG** or **PNG** image data into an **EVE** specific bitmap, in **RAM_G**. The image data should be in the following formats:

- Regular baseline **JPEG** (**JFIF**)
- **PNG** with bit-depth 8 only and no interlace

C prototype

```
void cmd_loadimage( uint32_t ptr,
                    uint32_t options );
```

Parameters

ptr
Destination address

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

options
Option **OPT_MONO** forces the bitmap to be monochrome in **L8** format. Otherwise, the image is loaded depends on the type of input image:

For **JPEG** images, the bitmap is loaded as either a **RGB565** or **L8** format bitmap, depending on the original image. If **OPT_MONO** is given, **L8** is used.

For **PNG** images, the **PNG** standard defines several image color formats. Each format is loaded as a bitmap as follows:

Color type	Format	Remarks
0	Grayscale	loads as **L8**
2	Truecolor	loads as **RGB565**
3	Indexed	loads as **PALETTED565** or **PALETTED4444**
4	Grayscale and alpha	not supported
6	Truecolor and alpha	loads as **ARGB4**

Option **OPT_FULLSCREEN** causes the bitmap to be scaled so that it fills as much of the screen as possible.

If option **OPT_MEDIAFIFO** is given, the media FIFO is used for the image data source.

If option **OPT_FLASH** is given, then the flash memory is the image data source.

If neither option **OPT_MEDIAFIFO** nor option **OPT_FLASH** is given, then the byte data shall immediately follow in the command **FIFO**. When flash is the source, call **CMD_FLASHSOURCE** before this command to specify the address. See CMD_FLASHSOURCE.

To minimize the programming effort to render the loaded image, there are a set of display list commands generated and appended to the current display list, unless **OPT_NODL** is given.

Description

The data byte should immediately follow in the command FIFO if **OPT_MEDIAFIFO** or **OPT_FLASH** is **NOT** set. If the number of bytes is not a multiple of 4, then 1, 2 or 3 bytes should be appended to ensure 4-byte alignment of the next command. These padding bytes can have any value. The application on the host processor has to parse the JPEG/PNG header to get the properties of the JPEG/PNG image and decide to decode. Behavior is unpredictable in cases of non-baseline JPEG images or the output data generated is more than the **RAM_G** size.

Note: If the loading image is in PNG format, the top 42K bytes from address 0xF5800 of RAM_G will be overwritten as temporary data buffer for decoding process.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_LOADIMAGE(0xFFFF FF24)**
+4	ptr
+8	options
+12	byte 0
+13	byte 1
…	…
+n	byte n

Examples

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

To load a JPEG image at address 0 then draw the bitmap at (10, 20) and (100, 20):

```
cmd_loadimage(0, 0);
...                                 // JPEG file data follows
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(VERTEX2II(10, 20, 0, 0));       // draw bitmap at (10,20)
cmd(VERTEX2II(100, 20, 0, 0));      // draw bitmap at (100,20)
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.24 CMD_MEDIAFIFO

This command is to set up a streaming media FIFO. Allocate the specified area of **RAM_G** and set it up as streaming media **FIFO**, which is used by:

- **MJPEG** video play-back : **CMD_PLAYVIDEO/CMD_VIDEOFRAME**
- **JPEG/PNG** image decoding: **CMD_LOADIMAGE**
- Compressed data by zlib: **CMD_INFLATE2**

if the option **OPT_MEDIAFIFO** is selected.

C prototype

```
void cmd_mediafifo (    uint32_t ptr,
                        uint32_t size );
```

Parameters

ptr
starting address of media **FIFO**

size
number of bytes of media **FIFO**

Command layout

+0	**CMD_MEDIAFIFO (0xFFFF FF39)**
+4	ptr
+8	size

Examples

To set up a 64-Kbyte FIFO at the top of **RAM_G** for JPEG streaming and report the initial values of the read and write pointers:

```
cmd_mediafifo(0x100000 - 65536, 65536);      //0x100000 is the top of RAM_G
printf("R=%08xW=%08x\n",rd32(REG_MEDIAFIFO_READ),rd32(REG_MEDIAFIFO_WRITE));
```

It prints:

R=0x000F000 W=0x00F000

5.25 CMD_PLAYVIDEO

This command plays back **MJPEG**-encoded AVI video.

Playback starts immediately, and the command completes when playback ends. The playback may be paused or terminated by writing to **REG_PLAY_CONTROL**. The register's value controls playback as follows:

- -1(0xFF) exit playback
- 0 pause playback
- 1 play normally

During the command execution, the **RGB565** bitmap will be created at starting address of **RAM_G**, and is $2 \times W \times H$ bytes in size, where W and H are the width and height of the video. If **OPT_SOUND** is given then a 32 Kbyte audio buffer follows the bitmap. It means that area of RAM_G will be overwritten by **CMD_PLAYVIDEO**.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

C prototype

void cmd_playvideo (uint32_t opts);

Parameters

opts: The options of playing video

OPT_FULLSCREEN: zoom the video so that it fills as much of the screen as possible.

OPT_MEDIAFIFO: instead of sourcing the AVI video data from the command buffer, source it from the media FIFO in **RAM_G**.

OPT_FLASH: Source video data from flash.When flash is the source, call CMD_FLASHSOURCE before this command to specify the address. See CMD_FLASHSOURCE.

OPT_NOTEAR: Synchronize video updates to the display blanking interval, avoiding horizontal tearing artifacts.

OPT_SOUND: Decode the audio data encoded in the data following, if any.

OPT_OVERLAY: Append the video bitmap to an existing display list, instead of starting a new display list.

OPT_NODL: Will not change the current display list. There should already be a display list rendering the video bitmap.

data
The video data to be played unless **opts** is assigned with **OPT_MEDIAFIFO** or **OPT_FLASH**.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_PLAYVIDEO (0xFFFF FF3A)**
+4	opts
+8~ +n	$byte_1$ … $byte_n$

Data following parameter "opts" shall be padded to 4 bytes aligned with zero.

Note: For the audio data encoded into AVI video, three formats are supported:

4 Bit IMA ADPCM, 8 Bit signed PCM, 8 Bit u-Law

In addition, 16 Bit PCM is partially supported by dropping off less significant 8 bits in each audio sample.

Examples

To play back an AVI video, full-screen:

```
cmd_playvideo(OPT_FULLSCREEN | OPT_NOTEAR);
//... append AVI data ...
```

5.26 CMD_VIDEOSTART

This command is used to initialize video frame decoder. The video data should be supplied using the media FIFO. This command processes the video header information from the media FIFO, and completes when it has consumed it.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

C prototype

void cmd_videostart( );

Parameters

None

Command layout

+0	**CMD_VIDEOSTART (0xFFFF FF40)**

Examples

To load frames of video at address 4:

```
cmd_videostart();
cmd_videoframe(4, 0);
```

5.27 CMD_VIDEOFRAME

This command is used to load the next frame of a video. The video data should be supplied in the media **FIFO** or flash memory. This command extracts the next frame of video, and completes when it has consumed it.

C prototype

```
void cmd_videoframe(    uint32_t dst,
                        uint32_t ptr );
```

Parameters

dst
Memory location to load the frame data, this will be located in **RAM_G.**

ptr
Completion pointer. The command writes the 32-bit word at this location. It is set to 1 if there is at least one more frame available in the video. 0 indicates that this is the last frame. The value of ptr shall be within **RAM_G**.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_VIDEOFRAME (0xFFFF FF41)**
+4	dst
+8	ptr

Examples

To load frames of video at address 4:

```
cmd_videostart();
do {
   cmd_videoframe(4, 0);
   //... display frame ...
} while (rd32(0) != 0);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.28 CMD_MEMCRC

This command computes a CRC-32 for a block of **RAM_G** memory.

C prototype

```
void cmd_memcrc(  uint32_t ptr,
                  uint32_t num,
                  uint32_t result  );
```

Parameters

ptr
Starting address of the memory block

num
Number of bytes in the source memory block

result
Output parameter; written with the CRC-32 after command execution.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_MEMCRC(0xFFFF FF18)**
+4	ptr
+8	num
+12	result

Examples

To compute the CRC-32 of the first 1K byte of memory, first record the value of **REG_CMD_WRITE**, execute the command, wait for completion, then read the 32-bit value at result:

```
uint16_t x = rd16(REG_CMD_WRITE);
cmd_crc(0, 1024, 0);

//wait till the command is complete
printf("CRC result is %08x\n", rd32(RAM_CMD + (x + 12) % 4096));
```

5.29 CMD_MEMZERO

This command is used to write zero to a block of memory.

C prototype

```
void cmd_memzero(  uint32_t ptr, uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

ptr
Starting address of the memory block

num
Number of bytes in the memory block

Command layout

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

+0	CMD_MEMZERO(0xFFFF FF1C)
+4	ptr
+8	num

Examples

```
//To erase the first 1K of main memory:
cmd_memzero(0, 1024);
```

5.30 CMD_MEMSET

This command is used to fill memory with a byte value

C prototype

```
void cmd_memset(  uint32_t ptr,
                  uint32_t value,
                  uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

ptr
Starting address of the memory block

value
Value to be written to memory

num
Number of bytes in the memory block

Command layout

+0	CMD_MEMSET(0xFFFF FF1B)
+4	ptr
+8	value
+12	num

Examples

```
//To write 0xff the first 1K of main memory:
cmd_memset(0, 0xff, 1024);
```

5.31 CMD_MEMCPY

This command is used to copy a block of memory.

C prototype

```
void cmd_memcpy(  uint32_t dest,
                  uint32_t src,
                  uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

dest
address of the destination memory block
src

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

address of the source memory block

num
number of bytes to copy

Command layout

+0	**CMD_MEMCPY(0xFFFF FF1D)**
+4	dst
+8	src
+12	num

Examples

```
//To copy 1K byte of memory from 0 to 0x8000:
cmd_memcpy(0x8000, 0, 1024);
```

5.32 CMD_BUTTON

This command is used to draw a button with a UTF-8 label.

C prototype

```
void cmd_button(  int16_t x,
                  int16_t y,
                  int16_t w,
                  int16_t h,
                  int16_t font,
                  uint16_t options,
                  const char* s );
```

Parameters

x
X-coordinate of button top-left, in pixels

y
Y-coordinate of button top-left, in pixels

w
width of button, in pixels

h
height of button, in pixels

font
bitmap handle to specify the font used in the button label. See ROM and RAM Fonts.

options
By default, the button is drawn with a 3D effect and the value is zero. **OPT_FLAT** removes the 3D effect. The value of **OPT_FLAT** is 256.

s
Button label. It must be one string terminated with null character, i.e. "\0" in C language. UTF-8 encoded. If **OPT_FILL** is not given then the string may contain newline (\n) characters, indicating line breaks. See 5.6 String Formatting.

Description
Refer to Coprocessor engine widgets physical dimensions for more information.
Command layout

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

+0	**CMD_BUTTON(0xFFFF FF0D)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	h
+12	font
+14	options
+16	s
+17	…
…	…
+n	0

Examples

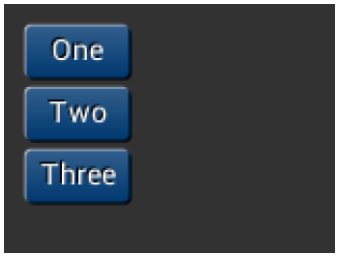
A 140x100 pixel button with large text:

```
cmd_button(10, 10, 140, 100, 31, 0, "Press!");
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_button(10, 10, 140, 100, 31, OPT_FLAT,
"Press!");
```

Several smaller buttons:




```
cmd_button(10, 10, 50, 25, 26, 0, "One");
cmd_button(10, 40, 50, 25, 26, 0, "Two");
cmd_button(10, 70, 50, 25, 26, 0, "Three");
```

Changing button color

```
cmd_fgcolor(0xb9b900),
cmd_button(10, 10, 50, 25, 26, 0, "Banana");
cmd_fgcolor(0xb97300),
cmd_button(10, 40, 50, 25, 26, 0, "Orange");
cmd_fgcolor(0xb90007),
cmd_button(10, 70, 50, 25, 26, 0, "Cherry");
```

5.33 CMD_CLOCK

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

This command is used to draw an analog clock.

C prototype

```
void cmd_clock(   int16_t x,
                  int16_t y,
                  int16_t r,
                  uint16_t options,
                  uint16_t h,
                  uint16_t m,
                  uint16_t s,
                  uint16_t ms );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of clock center, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of clock center, in pixels

r
the radius of clock, in pixels

options
By default the clock dial is drawn with a 3D effect and the name of this option is OPT_3D. Option OPT_FLAT removes the 3D effect.
With option OPT_NOBACK, the background is not drawn.
With option OPT_NOTICKS, the twelve hour ticks are not drawn.
With option OPT_NOSECS, the seconds hand is not drawn.
With option OPT_NOHANDS, no hands are drawn.
With option OPT_NOHM, no hour and minutes hands are drawn.

h
hours

m
minutes

s
seconds

ms
milliseconds

Description

The details of the physical dimensions are:

- The 12 tick marks are placed on a circle of radius r*(200/256).
- Each tick is a point of radius r*(10/256)
- The seconds hand has length r*(200/256) and width r*(3/256)
- The minutes hand has length r*(150/256) and width r*(9/256)
- The hours hand has length r*(100/256) and width r*(12/256)

Refer to Coprocessor engine widgets physical dimensions for more information.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Command layout

+0	**CMD_CLOCK(0xFFFF FF14)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	r
+10	options
+12	h
+14	m
+16	s
+18	ms

Examples

A clock with radius 50 pixels, showing a time of 8.15:

```
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, 0, 8, 15, 0, 0);
```

Setting the background color

```
cmd_bgcolor(0x401010);
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, 0, 8, 15, 0, 0);
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, OPT_FLAT, 8, 15, 0, 0);
```

The time fields can have large values. Here the hours are (7 x 3600s) and minutes are (38 x 60s), and seconds is 59. Creating a clock face showing the time as 7.38.59:

```
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, 0,0, 0, (7 * 3600) + (38 * 60)
+ 59, 0);
```

No seconds hand:

```
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, OPT_NOSECS, 8, 15, 0, 0);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

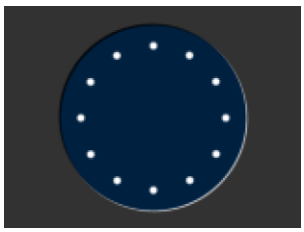
No Background:

```
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, OPT_NOBACK, 8, 15, 0, 0);
```

No ticks:

```
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, OPT_NOTICKS, 8, 15, 0, 0);
```

No hands:



```
cmd_clock(80, 60, 50, OPT_NOHANDS, 8, 15, 0, 0);
```

5.34 CMD_FGCOLOR

This command is used to set the foreground color.

C prototype

void cmd_fgcolor(uint32_t c);

Parameters

c
New foreground color, as a 24-bit RGB number.
Red is the most significant 8 bits, blue is the least. So 0xff0000 is bright red.
Foreground color is applicable for things that the user can move such as handles and buttons.

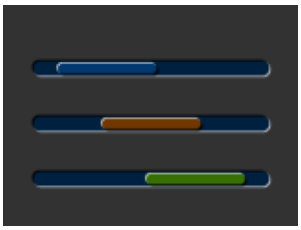
Command layout

+0	**CMD_FGCOLOR(0xFFFF FF0A)**
+4	c

Examples

The top scrollbar uses the default foreground color, the others with a changed color:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd



```
cmd_scrollbar(20, 30, 120, 8, 0, 10, 40, 100);
cmd_fgcolor(0x703800);
cmd_scrollbar(20, 60, 120, 8, 0, 30, 40, 100);
cmd_fgcolor(0x387000);
cmd_scrollbar(20, 90, 120, 8, 0, 50, 40, 100);
```

5.35 CMD_BGCOLOR

This command is used to set the background color

C prototype

void cmd_bgcolor(uint32_t c);

Parameters

c
New background color, as a 24-bit RGB number.
Red is the most significant 8 bits, blue is the least. So 0xff0000 is bright red.

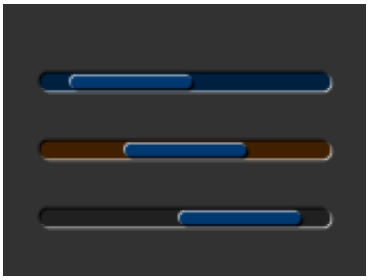
Background color is applicable for things that the user cannot move E.g. behind gauges and sliders etc.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_BGCOLOR(0xFFFF FF09)**
+4	c

Examples

The top scrollbar uses the default background color, the others with a changed color:



```
cmd_scrollbar(20, 30, 120, 8, 0, 10, 40, 100);
cmd_bgcolor(0x402000);
cmd_scrollbar(20, 60, 120, 8, 0, 30, 40, 100);
cmd_bgcolor(0x202020);
cmd_scrollbar(20, 90, 120, 8, 0, 50, 40, 100);
```

5.36 CMD_GRADCOLOR

This command is used to set the 3D Button Highlight Color

C prototype

void cmd_gradcolor(uint32_t c);

Parameters

c
New highlight gradient color, as a 24-bit RGB number.
White is the default value, i.e., 0xFFFFFF.
Red is the most significant 8 bits, blue is the least. So 0xFF0000 is bright red.
Gradient is supported only for Button and Keys widgets.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Command layout

+0	**CMD_GRADCOLOR(0xFFFF FF34)**
+4	c

Examples

Changing the gradient color: white, red, green and blue:

```
cmd_fgcolor(0x101010);
cmd_button( 2, 2, 76, 56, 31, 0, "W");
cmd_gradcolor(0xff0000);
cmd_button( 82, 2, 76, 56, 31, 0, "R");
cmd_gradcolor(0x00ff00);
cmd_button( 2, 62, 76, 56, 31, 0, "G");
cmd_gradcolor(0x0000ff);
cmd_button( 82, 62, 76, 56, 31, 0, "B");
```

The gradient color is also used for keys:

```
cmd_fgcolor(0x101010);
cmd_keys(10, 10, 140, 30, 26, 0, "abcde");
cmd_gradcolor(0xff0000);
cmd_keys(10, 50, 140, 30, 26, 0, "fghij");
```

5.37 CMD_GAUGE

This command is used to draw a Gauge.

C prototype

```
void cmd_gauge( int16_t x,
                int16_t y,
                int16_t r,
                uint16_t options,
                uint16_t major,
                uint16_t minor,
                uint16_t val,
                uint16_t range );
```

Parameters

x
X-coordinate of gauge center, in pixels

y
Y-coordinate of gauge center, in pixels

r
Radius of the gauge, in pixels

options
By default the gauge dial is drawn with a 3D effect and the value of options is zero. OPT_FLAT removes the 3D effect. With option OPT_NOBACK, the background is not drawn. With option OPT_NOTICKS, the tick marks are not drawn. With option OPT_NOPOINTER, the pointer is not drawn.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

major
Number of major subdivisions on the dial, 1-10

minor
Number of minor subdivisions on the dial, 1-10

val
Gauge indicated value, between 0 and range, inclusive

range
Maximum value

Description

The details of physical dimension are:

- The tick marks are placed on a 270 degree arc, clockwise starting at south-west position
- Minor ticks are lines of width r*(2/256), major r*(6/256)
- Ticks are drawn at a distance of r*(190/256) to r*(200/256)
- The pointer is drawn with lines of width r*(4/256), to a point r*(190/256)from the center
- The other ends of the lines are each positioned 90 degrees perpendicular to the pointer direction, at a distance r*(3/256) from the center

Refer to Coprocessor engine widgets physical dimensions for more information.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_GAUGE(0xFFFF FF13)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	r
+10	options
+12	major
+14	minor
+16	value
+18	range

Examples

A gauge with radius 50 pixels, five divisions of four ticks each, indicates 30%:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, 0, 5, 4, 30, 100);
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, OPT_FLAT, 5, 4, 30, 100);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Ten major divisions with two minor divisions each:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, 0, 10, 2, 30, 100);
```

Setting the minor divisions to 1 makes them disappear:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, 0, 10, 1, 30, 100);
```

Setting the major divisions to 1 gives minor division only:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, 0, 1, 10, 30, 100);
```

A smaller gauge with a brown background:

```
cmd_bgcolor(0x402000);
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 25, 0, 5, 4, 30, 100);
```

Scale 0-1000, indicating 1000:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, 0, 5, 2, 1000, 1000);
```

Scaled 0-65535, indicating 49152:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, 0, 4, 4, 49152, 65535);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

No background:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, OPT_NOBACK, 4, 4, 49152,
65535);
```

No tick marks:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, OPT_NOTICKS, 4, 4, 49152,
65535);
```

No pointer:

```
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, OPT_NOPOINTER, 4, 4, 49152,
65535);
```

Drawing the gauge in two passes, with bright red for the pointer:

```
GAUGE_0 = OPT_NOPOINTER;
GAUGE_1 = OPT_NOBACK | OPT_NOTICKS;
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, GAUGE_0, 4, 4, 49152, 65535);
cmd(COLOR_RGB(255, 0, 0));
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, GAUGE_1, 4, 4, 49152, 65535);
```

Add a custom graphic to the gauge by drawing its background, a bitmap, and then its foreground:

```
GAUGE_0 = OPT_NOPOINTER | OPT_NOTICKS;
GAUGE_1 = OPT_NOBACK;
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, GAUGE_0, 4, 4, 49152, 65535);
cmd(COLOR_RGB(130, 130, 130));
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(VERTEX2II(80 - 32, 60 -32, 0, 0));
cmd(COLOR_RGB(255, 255, 255));
cmd_gauge(80, 60, 50, GAUGE_1, 4, 4, 49152, 65535);
```

5.38 CMD_GRADIENT

This command is used to draw a smooth color gradient.

C prototype

```
void cmd_gradient(    int16_t x0,
                      int16_t y0,
                      uint32_t rgb0,
                      int16_t x1,
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
                    int16_t y1,
                    uint32_t rgb1 );
```

Parameters

x0
x-coordinate of point 0, in pixels

y0
y-coordinate of point 0, in pixels

rgb0
Color of point 0, as a 24-bit RGB number. Red is the most significant 8 bits, Blue is the least. So 0xff0000 is bright red.

x1
x-coordinate of point 1, in pixels

y1
y-coordinate of point 1, in pixels

rgb1
Color of point 1, same definition as **rgb0.**

Description

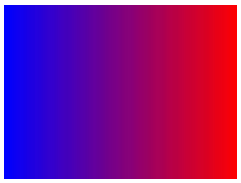
All the color step values are calculated based on smooth curve interpolated from the RGB0 to RGB1 parameter. The smooth curve equation is independently calculated for all three colors and the equation used is $R0 + t * (R1 - - R0)$, where it is interpolated between 0 and 1. Gradient must be used with Scissor function to get the intended gradient display.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_GRAGIENT(0xFFFF FF0B)**
+4	x0
+6	y0
+8	rgb0
+12	x1
+14	y1
+16	rgb1

Examples

A horizontal gradient from blue to red



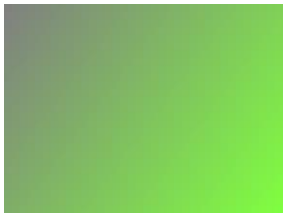
```
cmd_gradient(0, 0, 0x0000ff, 160, 0, 0xff0000);
```

A vertical gradient

```
cmd_gradient(0, 0, 0x808080, 0, 120, 0x80ff40);
```

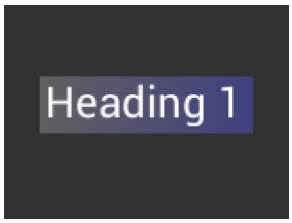

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

The same colors in a diagonal gradient



```
cmd_gradient(0, 0, 0x808080, 160, 120, 0x80ff40);
```

Using a scissor rectangle to draw a gradient stripe as a background for a title:




```
cmd(SCISSOR_XY(20, 40));
cmd(SCISSOR_SIZE(120, 32));
cmd_gradient(20, 0, 0x606060, 140, 0, 0x404080);
cmd_text(23, 40, 29, 0, "Heading 1");
```

5.39 CMD_GRADIENTA

This command is used to draw a smooth color gradient with transparency. The two points have RGB color values, and alpha values which specify their opacity in the range 0x00 to 0xff.

C prototype

```
void cmd_gradienta( int16_t  x0,
                    int16_t  y0,
                    uint32_t argb0,
                    int16_t  x1,
                    int16_t  y1,
                    uint32_t argb1 );
```

Parameters

x0
x-coordinate of point 0, in pixels

y0
y-coordinate of point 0, in pixels

argb0
color of point 0, as a 32-bit ARGB number. A is the most significant 8 bits, B is the least. So 0x80ff0000 is 50% transparent bright red, and 0xff0000ff is solid blue.

x1
x-coordinate of point 1, in pixels

y1
y-coordinate of point 1, in pixels

argb1
color of point 1

Description

All the color step values are calculated based on smooth curve interpolated from the RGB0 to RGB1 parameter. The smooth curve equation is independently calculated for all three colors and

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

the equation used is $R0 + t * (R1 - - R0)$, where it is interpolated between 0 and 1. Gradient must be used with scissor function to get the intended gradient display.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_GRADIENTA(0xFFFF FF57)**
+4	x0
+6	y0
+8	argb0
+12	x1
+14	y1
+16	argb1

Examples

A solid green gradient, transparent on the right:

```
cmd_text(80, 60, 30, OPT_CENTER, "background");
cmd_gradienta(0,0,0xff00ff00,160,0,0x0000ff00);
```

A vertical gradient from transparent red to solid blue:

```
cmd_text(80, 30, 30, OPT_CENTER, "background");
cmd_text(80, 60, 30, OPT_CENTER, "background");
cmd_text(80, 90, 30, OPT_CENTER, "background");
cmd_gradienta(0,20,0x40ff0000,0,100,0xff0000ff);
```

5.40 CMD_KEYS

This command is used to draw a row of keys.

C prototype

```
void cmd_keys(    int16_t x,
                  int16_t y,
                  int16_t w,
                  int16_t h,
                  int16_t font,
                  uint16_t options,
                  const char* s  );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of keys top-left, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of keys top-left, in pixels

font
Bitmap handle to specify the font used in key label. The valid range is from 0 to 31

options

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

By default the keys are drawn with a 3D effect and the value of option is zero. OPT_FLAT removes the 3D effect. If OPT_CENTER is given the keys are drawn at minimum size centered within the w x h rectangle. Otherwise the keys are expanded so that they completely fill the available space. If an ASCII code is specified, that key is drawn"pressed"-- i.e. in background color with any 3D effect removed.

w
The width of the keys

h
The height of the keys

s
key labels, one character per key. The TAG value is set to the ASCII value of each key, so that key presses can be detected using the REG_TOUCH_TAG register.

Description

The details of physical dimension are:

- The gap between keys is 3 pixels
- For **OPT_CENTERX** case, the keys are (font width + 1.5) pixels wide, otherwise keys are sized to fill available width

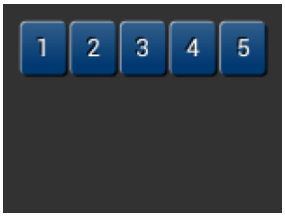
Refer to Coprocessor engine widgets physical dimensions for more information.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_KEYS(0xFFFF FF0E)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	h
+12	font
+14	options
+16	s
…	…
+n	0

Examples

A row of keys:



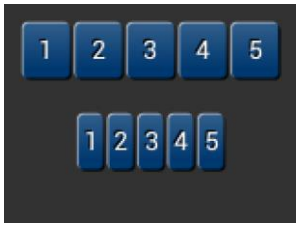

```
cmd_keys(10, 10, 140, 30, 26, 0, "12345");
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_keys(10, 10, 140, 30, 26, OPT_FLAT, "12345");
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Default vs. centered:




```
cmd_keys(10, 10, 140, 30, 26, 0, "12345");
cmd_keys(10, 60, 140, 30, 26, OPT_CENTER,
"12345");
```

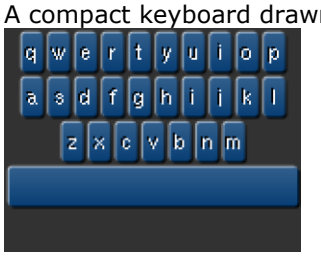
Setting the options to show'''' key pressed '''' is ASCII code 0x32):

```
cmd_keys(10, 10, 140, 30, 26, 0x32, "12345");
```

A calculator-style keyboard using font 29:

```
cmd_keys(22, 1, 116, 28, 29, 0, "789");
cmd_keys(22, 31, 116, 28, 29, 0, "456");
cmd_keys(22, 61, 116, 28, 29, 0, "123");
cmd_keys(22, 91, 116, 28, 29, 0, "0.");
```

A compact keyboard drawn in font 20:




```
cmd_keys(2, 2, 156, 21, 20, OPT_CENTER,
"qwertyuiop");
cmd_keys(2, 26, 156, 21, 20, OPT_CENTER,
"asdfghijkl");
cmd_keys(2, 50, 156, 21, 20, OPT_CENTER, "zxcvbnm");
cmd_button(2, 74, 156, 21, 20, 0, "");
```

Showing the f (ASCII 0x66) key pressed:

```
k = 0x66;
cmd_keys(2, 2, 156, 21, 20, k | OPT_CENTER,
"qwertyuiop");
cmd_keys(2, 26, 156, 21, 20, k | OPT_CENTER,
"asdfghijkl");
cmd_keys(2, 50, 156, 21, 20, k | OPT_CENTER,
"zxcvbnm");
Cmd_button(2, 74, 156, 21, 20, 0, "");
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.41 CMD_PROGRESS

This command is used to draw a progress bar.

C prototype

```
void cmd_progress(    int16_t x,
                      int16_t y,
                      int16_t w,
                      int16_t h,
                      uint16_t options,
                      uint16_t val,
                      uint16_t range );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of progress bar top-left, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of progress bar top-left, in pixels

w
width of progress bar, in pixels

h
height of progress bar, in pixels

options
By default the progress bar is drawn with a 3D effect and the value of options is zero. Options OPT_FLAT remove the 3D effect and its value is 256

val
Displayed value of progress bar, between 0 and range inclusive

range
Maximum value

Description

The details of physical dimensions are--

- x,y,w,h give outer dimensions of progress bar. Radius of barI) is min(w,h)/2
- Radius of inner progress line is r*(7/8)

Refer to Coprocessor engine widgets physical dimensions for more information.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_PROGRESS(0xFFFF FF0F)**
+4	X
+6	Y
+8	W
+10	h
+12	options
+14	val
+16	range

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Examples

A progress bar showing 50% completion:

```
cmd_progress(20, 50, 120, 12, 0, 50, 100);
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_progress(20, 50, 120, 12, OPT_FLAT, 50, 100);
```

A 4 pixel high bar, range 0-65535, with a brown background:

```
cmd_bgcolor(0x402000);
cmd_progress(20, 50, 120, 4, 0, 9000, 65535);
```

5.42 CMD_SCROLLBAR

This command is used to draw a scroll bar.

C prototype

```
void cmd_scrollbar(  int16_t x,
                     int16_t y,
                     int16_t w,
                     int16_t h,
                     uint16_t options,
                     uint16_t val,
                     uint16_t size,
                     uint16_t range );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of scroll bar top-left, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of scroll bar top-left, in pixels

w
Width of scroll bar, in pixels. If width is greater than height, the scroll bar is drawn horizontally

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

h
Height of scroll bar, in pixels. If height is greater than width, the scroll bar is drawn vertically
options
By default the scroll bar is drawn with a 3D effect and the value of options is zero. Options OPT_FLAT remove the 3D effect and its value is 256

val
Displayed value of scroll bar, between 0 and range inclusive

range
Maximum value

Description

Refer to CMD_PROGRESS for more information on physical dimension.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SCROLLBAR(0xFFFF FF11)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	h
+12	options
+14	val
+16	size
+18	range

Examples

A scroll bar indicating 10-50%:

```
cmd scrollbar(20, 50, 120, 8, 0, 10, 40, 100);
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_scrollbar(20, 50, 120, 8, OPT_FLAT, 10, 40,
100);
```

A brown-themed vertical scroll bar:

```
cmd_bgcolor(0x402000);
cmd_fgcolor(0x703800);
cmd_scrollbar(140, 10, 8, 100, 0, 10, 40, 100);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.43 CMD_SLIDER

This command is to draw a slider.

C prototype

```
void cmd_slider(  int16_t x,
                  int16_t y,
                  int16_t w,
                  int16_t h,
                  uint16_t options,
                  uint16_t val,
                  uint16_t range );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of slider top-left, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of slider top-left, in pixels

w
width of slider, in pixels. If width is greater than height, the scroll bar is drawn horizontally

h
height of slider, in pixels. If height is greater than width, the scroll bar is drawn vertically

options
By default the slider is drawn with a 3D effect. OPT_FLAT removes the 3D effect

val
Displayed value of slider, between 0 and range inclusive

range
Maximum value

Description

Refer to CMD_PROGRESS for more information on physical dimension.

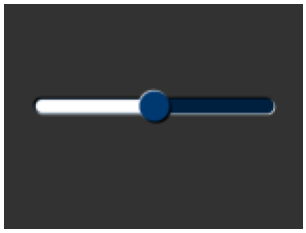
Command layout

+0	**CMD_SLIDER(0xFFFF FF10)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	h
+12	options
+14	val
+16	range

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Examples

A slider set to 50%:

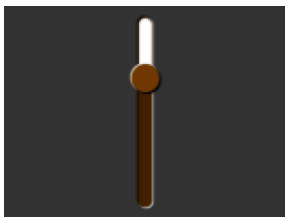


```
cmd_slider(20, 50, 120, 8, 0, 50, 100);
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_slider(20, 50, 120, 8, OPT_FLAT, 50, 100);
```

A brown-themed vertical slider with range 0-65535:



```
cmd_bgcolor(0x402000);
cmd_fgcolor(0x703800);
cmd_slider(76, 10, 8, 100, 0, 20000, 65535);
```

5.44 CMD_DIAL

This command is used to draw a rotary dial control.

C prototype

```
void cmd_dial( int16_t x,
               int16_t y,
               int16_t r,
               uint16_t options,
               uint16_t val );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of dial center, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of dial center, in pixels

r
radius of dial, in pixels.

options
By default the dial is drawn with a 3D effect and the value of options is zero. Options OPT_FLAT remove the 3D effect and its value is 256

val

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Specify the position of dial points by setting value between 0 and 65535 inclusive. 0 means that the dial points straight down, 0x4000 left, 0x8000 up, and0xc000 right.

Description

The details of physical dimension are

- The marker is a line of width r*(12/256), drawn at a distance r*(140/256)to r*(210/256) from the center

Refer to Coprocessor engine widgets physical dimensions for more information.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_DIAL(0xFFFF FF2D)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	r
+10	options
+12	val

Examples

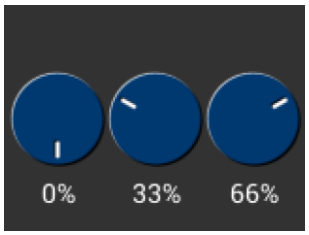
A dial set to 50%:

```
cmd_dial(80, 60, 55, 0, 0x8000);
```

Without the 3D look:

```
cmd_dial(80, 60, 55, OPT_FLAT, 0x8000);
```

Dials set to 0%, 33% and 66%:




```
cmd_dial(28, 60, 24, 0, 0x0000);
cmd_text(28, 100, 26, OPT_CENTER, "0%");
cmd_dial(80, 60, 24, 0, 0x5555);
cmd_text(80, 100, 26, OPT_CENTER, "33%");
cmd_dial(132, 60, 24, 0, 0xaaaa);
cmd_text(132, 100, 26, OPT_CENTER, "66%");
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.45 CMD_TOGGLE

This command is used to draw a toggle switch with UTF-8 labels.

C prototype

```
void cmd_toggle(  int16_t x,
                  int16_t y,
                  int16_t w,
                  int16_t font,
                  uint16_t options,
                  uint16_t state,
                  const char* s );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of top-left of toggle, in pixel

y
y-coordinate of top-left of toggle, in pixels

w
width of toggle, in pixels

font
Font to use for text, 0-31. See ROM and RAM Fonts

options
By default the toggle is drawn with a 3D effect and the value of options is zero. Options **OPT_FLAT** remove the 3D effect and its value is 256

state
State of the toggle: 0 is off, 65535 is on.

s
string labels for toggle,UTF-8 encoding. A character value of 255 (in C it can be written as '\xff') separates the label strings. See 5.6 String Formatting.

Description

The details of physical dimension are:

- Widget height (h) is font height * (20/16) pixel.
- Outer bar radius (r) is font height * (10/16) pixel.
- Knob radius is (r-1.5) pixel, where r is the outer bar radius above.
- The center of outer bar's left round head is at (x, y + r/2) coordinate.

Refer to Coprocessor engine widgets physical dimensions for more information.

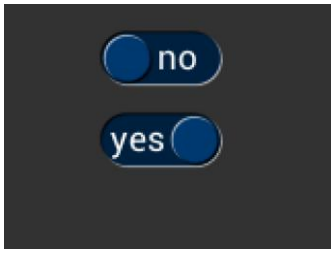
Command layout

+0	**CMD_TOGGLE(0xFFFF FF12)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	font
+12	options
+14	state
+16	s

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

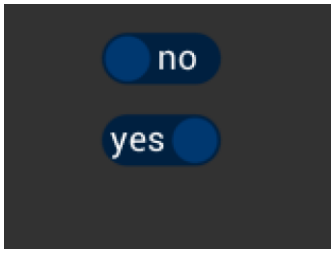
Examples

Using a medium font, in the two states:




```
cmd_toggle(60, 20, 33, 27, 0, 0, "no" " \xff"
"yes");
cmd_toggle(60, 60, 33, 27, 0, 65535, "no" "\xff"
"yes");
```

Without the 3D look:




```
cmd_toggle(60, 20, 33, 27, OPT_FLAT, 0, "no" "\xff"
"yes");
cmd_toggle(60, 60, 33, 27, OPT_FLAT, 65535, "no"
"\xff" "yes");
```

With different background and foreground colors:

```
cmd_bgcolor(0x402000);
cmd_fgcolor(0x703800);
cmd_toggle(60, 20, 33, 27, 0, 0, "no" "\xff"
"yes");
cmd_toggle(60, 60, 33, 27, 0, 65535, "no" "\xff"
"yes");
```

5.46 CMD_FILLWIDTH

This command sets the pixel fill width for **CMD_TEXT**,**CMD_BUTTON**,**CMD_BUTTON** with the **OPT_FILL** option.

C prototype

void cmd_fillwidth(uint32_t s);

Parameters

s
line fill width, in pixels

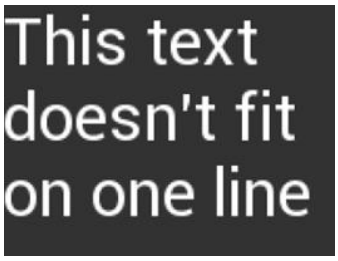
Command layout

+0	**CMD_FILLWIDTH(0xFFFF FF58)**
+4	s

Examples

Long text split into lines of no more than 160 pixels:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd




```
cmd_fillwidth(160);
cmd_text(0, 0, 30, OPT_FILL,"This text doesn't
fit on one line");
```

5.47 CMD_TEXT

This command is used to draw a UTF-8 Text string.

C prototype

```
void cmd_text(    int16_t x,
                  int16_t y,
                  int16_t font,
                  uint16_t options,
                  const char* s );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of text base, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of text base, in pixels

font
Font to use for text, 0-31. See ROM and RAM Fonts

options
By default (x,y) is the top-left pixel of the text and the value of options is zero.
OPT_CENTERX centers the text horizontally, OPT_CENTERY centers it vertically.
OPT_CENTER centers the text in both directions.
OPT_RIGHTX right-justifies the text, so that the x is the rightmost pixel.
OPT_FORMAT processes the text as a format string, see String formatting.
OPT_FILL breaks the text at spaces into multiple lines, with maximum width set by **CMD_FILLWiDTH**.

s
Text string, UTF-8 encoding. If **OPT_FILL** is not given then the string may contain newline (\n) characters, indicating line breaks. See 5.6 String Formatting

Command layout

+0	**CMD_TEXT(0xFFFF FF0C)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	font
+10	options
+12	s
..	..
..	0 (null character to terminate string)

Examples
Plain text at (0,0) in the largest font:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
cmd_text(0, 0, 31, 0, "Text!");
```

Using a smaller font:

```
cmd_text(0, 0, 26, 0, "Text!");
```

Centered horizontally:

```
cmd_text(80, 60, 31, OPT_CENTERX, "Text!");
```

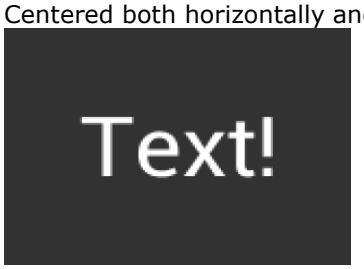
Right-justified:

```
cmd_text(80, 60, 31, OPT_RIGHTX, "Text!");
```

Centered vertically:

```
cmd_text(80, 60, 31, OPT_CENTERY, "Text!");
```

Centered both horizontally and vertically:



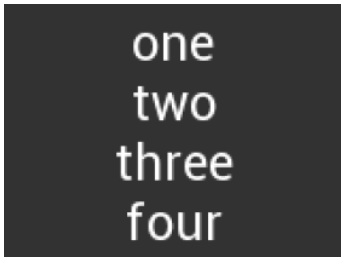

```
cmd_text(80, 60, 31, OPT_CENTER, "Text!");
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Text with explicit newline:

```
cmd_text(80,  60,  29,  OPT_CENTER,"one  two\nthree
four");
```

Text split into lines and centered:




```
cmd_fillwidth(80);
cmd_text(80, 60, 29, OPT_FILL | OPT_CENTER,"one
two three four");
```

5.48 CMD_SETBASE

This command is used to set the base for number output.

C prototype

void cmd_setbase(uint32_t b);

Parameters

b
Numeric base, valid values are from 2 to 36:
2 for binary,
8 for octal,
10 for decimal,
16 for hexadecimal

Description

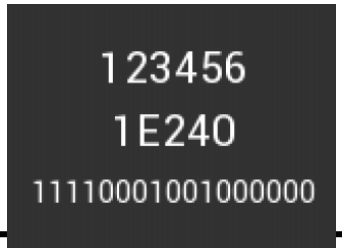
Set up numeric base for **CMD_NUMBER**

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SETBASE(0xFFFF FF38)**
+4	b

Examples

The number 123456 displayed in decimal, hexadecimal and binary:




```
cmd_number(80, 30, 28, OPT_CENTER, 123456);
cmd_setbase(16);
cmd_number(80, 60, 28, OPT_CENTER, 123456);
cmd_setbase(2);
cmd_number(80, 90, 26, OPT_CENTER, 123456);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.49 CMD_NUMBER

This command is used to draw a number.

C prototype

```
void cmd_number(int16_t x,
                int16_t y,
                int16_t font,
                uint16_t options,
                int32_t n );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of text base, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of text base, in pixels

font
font to use for text, 0-31. See ROM and RAM Fonts

options
By default (x,y) is the top-left pixel of the text.
OPT_CENTERX centers the text horizontally,
OPT_CENTERY centers it vertically.
OPT_CENTER centers the text in both directions.
OPT_RIGHTX right-justifies the text, so that the x is the rightmost pixel.

By default the number is displayed with no leading zeroes, but if a width 1-9 is specified in the options, then the number is padded if necessary with leading zeroes so that it has the given width. If OPT_SIGNED is given, the number is treated as signed, and prefixed by a minus sign if negative.

n
The number to display, is either unsigned or signed 32-bit, in the base specified in the preceding CMD_SETBASE. If no CMD_SETBASE appears before **CMD_NUMBER**, it will be in decimal base.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_NUMBER(0xFFFF FF2E)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	font
+10	options
+12	n

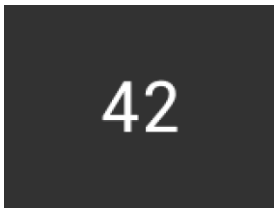
Examples

A number:

```
cmd_number(20, 60, 31, 0, 42);
```

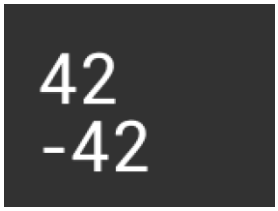

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Centered:



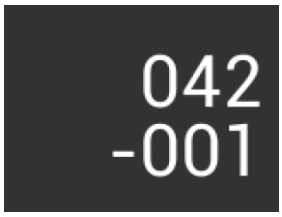

```
cmd_number(80, 60, 31, OPT_CENTER, 42);
```

Signed output of positive and negative numbers:




```
cmd_number(20, 20, 31, OPT_SIGNED, 42);
cmd_number(20, 60, 31, OPT_SIGNED, -42);
```

Forcing width to 3 digits, right-justified




```
cmd_number(150, 20, 31, OPT_RIGHTX | 3, 42);
cmd_number(150, 60, 31, OPT_SIGNED | OPT_RIGHTX | 3,
-1);
```

5.50 CMD_LOADIDENTITY

This command instructs the coprocessor engine to set the current matrix to the identity matrix, so that the coprocessor engine is able to form the new matrix as requested by CMD_SCALE, CMD_ROTATE,CMD_TRANSLATE command.

For more information on the identity matrix, refer to the Bitmap Transformation Matrix section.

C prototype

void cmd_loadidentity( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_LOADIDENTITY(0xFFFF FF26)**

5.51 CMD_SETMATRIX

The coprocessor engine assigns the value of the current matrix to the bitmap transform matrix of the graphics engine by generating display list commands, i.e., BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A-F. After this command, the following bitmap rendering operation will be affected by the new transform matrix.

C prototype

void cmd_setmatrix( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SETMATRIX(0xFFFF FF2A)**

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.52 CMD_GETMATRIX

This command retrieves the current matrix within the context of the coprocessor engine. Note the matrix within the context of the coprocessor engine will not apply to the bitmap transformation until it is passed to the graphics engine through **CMD_SETMATRIX**.

C prototype

```
void cmd_getmatrix(   int32_t  a,
                      int32_t  b,
                      int32_t  c,
                      int32_t  d,
                      int32_t  e,
                      int32_t  f  );
```

Parameters

a
output parameter; written with matrix coefficient a. See the parameter of the command BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A for formatting.

b
output parameter; written with matrix coefficient b. See the parameter b of the command BITMAP_TRANSFORM_B for formatting.

c
output parameter; written with matrix coefficient c. See the parameter c of the command BITMAP_TRANSFORM_C for formatting.

d
output parameter; written with matrix coefficient d. See the parameter d of the command BITMAP_TRANSFORM_D for formatting.

e
output parameter; written with matrix coefficient e. See the parameter e of the command BITMAP_TRANSFORM_E for formatting.

f
output parameter; written with matrix coefficient f. See the parameter f of the command BITMAP_TRANSFORM_F for formatting.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_GETMATRIX(0xFFFF FF33)**
+4	a
+8	b
+12	c
+16	d
+20	e
+24	f

5.53 CMD_GETPTR

This command returns the first unallocated memory location.

At API level 1, the allocation pointer is advanced by the following commands:

- cmd_inflate
- cmd_inflate2

At API level 2, the allocation pointer is also advanced by:

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

- cmd_loadimage
- cmd_playvideo
- cmd_videoframe
- cmd_endlist

C prototype

void cmd_getptr(uint32_t result);

Parameters

result
The first unallocated memory location.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_GETPTR (0xFFFF FF23)**
+4	result

Examples

```
cmd_inflate(1000); //Decompress the data into RAM_G + 1000
......             //Following the zlib compressed data
While(rd16(REG_CMD_WRITE) != rd16(REG_CMD_READ)); //Wait till the compression was done

uint16_t x = rd16(REG_CMD_WRITE);
uint32_t ending_address = 0;
cmd_getptr(0);
ending_address = rd32(RAM_CMD +  (x + 4) % 4096);
```

5.54 CMD_GETPROPS

This command returns the source address and size of the bitmap loaded by the previous **CMD_ LOADIMAGE.**

C prototype

void cmd_getprops(uint32_t ptr, uint32_t width, uint32_t height);

Parameters

ptr
Source address of bitmap.

Note :
At API Level 2 this parameter returns the source address of the decoded image data in RAM_G
At API level 1, this parameter has different meaning based on the input image format of CMD_LOADIMAGE: For JPEG, it is the source address of the decoded image data in RAM_G. For PNG, it is the first unused address in RAM_G after decoding process.

It is an output parameter.

width
The width of the image which was decoded by the last CMD_LOADIMAGE before this command.

It is an output parameter.

height

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

The height of the image which was decoded by the last CMD_LOADIMAGE before this command.

It is an output parameter

Command layout

+0	**CMD_GETPROPS (0xFFFF FF25)**
+4	wtr
+8	width
+12	height

Description

This command is used to retrieve the properties of the image which is decoded by **CMD_LOADIMAGE**. Respective image properties are updated by the coprocessor after this command is executed successfully.

Examples

Please refer to the CMD_GETPTR.

5.55 CMD_SCALE

This command is used to apply a scale to the current matrix.

C prototype

```
void cmd_scale(    int32_t sx,
                   int32_t sy );
```

Parameters

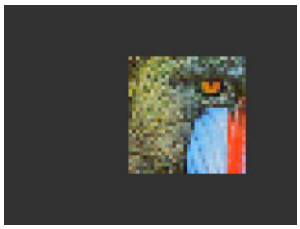
sx
x scale factor, in signed 16. 16 bit fixed-point Form.

sy
y scale factor, in signed 16. 16 bit fixed-point form.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SCALE(0xFFFF FF28)**
+4	sx
+8	sy

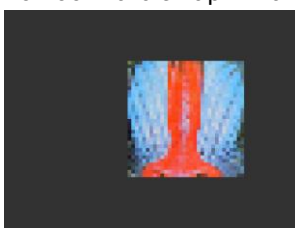
Examples
To zoom a bitmap 2X:



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_scale(2 * 65536, 2 * 65536);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

To zoom a bitmap 2X around its center:



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_translate(65536 * 32, 65536 * 32);
cmd_scale(2 * 65536, 2 * 65536);
cmd_translate(65536 * -32, 65536 * -32);
cmd_setmatrix();
```

5.56 CMD_ROTATE

This command is used to apply a rotation to the current matrix.

C prototype

void cmd_rotate(int32_t a);

Parameters

a
Clockwise rotation angle, in units of 1/65536 of a circle

Command layout

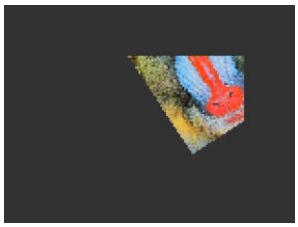
+0	**CMD_ROTATE(0xFFFF FF29)**
+4	a

Examples

To rotate the bitmap clockwise by 10 degrees with respect to the top left of the bitmap:

```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_rotate(10 * 65536 / 360);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```

To rotate the bitmap counter clockwise by 33 degrees around the top left of the bitmap:



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_rotate(-33 * 65536 / 360);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```

Rotating a 64 x 64 bitmap around its center:

```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_translate(65536 * 32, 65536 * 32);
cmd_rotate(90 * 65536 / 360);
cmd_translate(65536 * -32, 65536 * -32);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.57 CMD_ROTATEAROUND

This command is used to apply a rotation and scale around a specified coordinate.

C prototype

```
void cmd_rotatearound(  int32_t x,
                        int32_t y,
                        int32_t a,
                        int32_t s );
```

Parameters

x
center of rotation/scaling, x-coordinate

y
center of rotation/scaling, x-coordinate

a
clockwise rotation angle, in units of 1/65536 of a circle

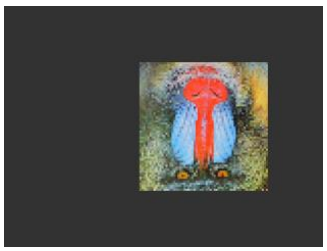
s
scale factor, in signed 16.16 bit fixed-point form

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ROTATEAROUND(0xFFFF FF51)**
+4	x
+8	y
+12	a
+16	s

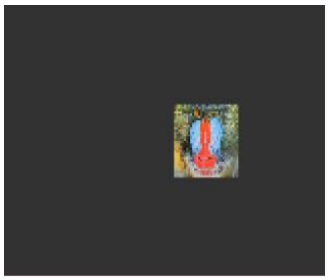
Examples

Rotating a 64 x 64 bitmap around its center:



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_rotatearound(32,32, 180 * 65536 /360,
65536 *1);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```

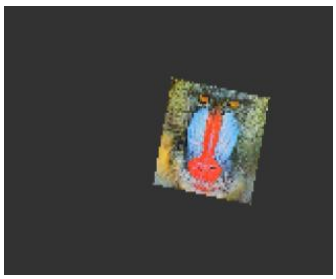
To halve the bitmap size, again around the center:



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_rotatearound(32, 32, 0, 0.5 * 65536);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

A combined 11 degree rotation and shrink by 0.75



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_rotatearound(32, 32,11*65536/360,0.75
* 65536);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68,28,0,0));
```

5.58 CMD_TRANSLATE

This command is used to apply a translation to the current matrix.

C prototype

```
void cmd_translate( int32_t tx,
                    int32_t ty );
```

Parameters

tx
x translate factor, in signed 16.16 bit fixed-point Form.

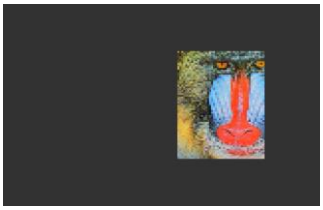
ty
y translate factor, in signed 16.16 bit fixed-point form.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_TRANSLATE(0xFFFF FF27)**
+4	tx
+8	ty

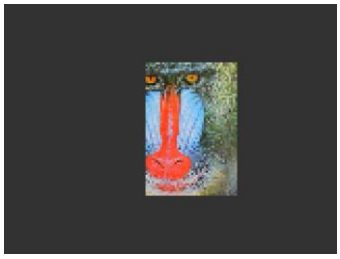
Examples

To translate the bitmap 20 pixels to the right:



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_translate(20 * 65536, 0);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```

To translate the bitmap 20 pixels to the left:



```
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd_loadidentity();
cmd_translate(-20 * 65536, 0);
cmd_setmatrix();
cmd(VERTEX2II(68, 28, 0, 0));
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.59 CMD_CALIBRATE

This command is used to execute the touch screen calibration routine. The calibration procedure collects three touches from the touch screen, then computes and loads an appropriate matrix into **REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A-F**. To use the function, create a display list and include **CMD_CALIBRATE**. The coprocessor engine overlays the touch targets on the current display list, gathers the calibration input and updates **REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A-F**. There is no need to add the **DISPLAY** command and swap the frame by software because coprocessor engine will do it once this command is received.

Please note that this command only applies to RTE and compatibility mode of CTSE.

C prototype

void cmd_calibrate(uint32_t result);

Parameters

result
output parameter; written with 0 on failure of calibration.

Description

The completion of this function is detected when the value of **REG_CMD_READ** is equal to **REG_CMD_WRITE**.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_CALIBRATE(0xFFFF FF15)**
+4	result

Examples

```
cmd_dlstart();
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd_text(80, 30, 27, OPT_CENTER, "Please tap on the dot");
cmd_calibrate();
```

5.60 CMD_CALIBRATESUB

This command is used to execute the touch screen calibration routine for a sub-window. Like **CMD_CALIBRATE**, except that instead of using the whole screen area, uses a smaller sub-window specified for the command. This is intended for panels which do not use the entire defined surface.

Please note that this command only applies to RTE and compatibility mode of CTSE.

C prototype

```
void cmd_calibratesub(  uint16_t x,
                        uint16_t y,
                        uint16_t w,
                        uint16_t h,
                        uint32_t result );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of top-left of subwindow, in pixels.

y

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

y-coordinate of top-left of subwindow, in pixels.

w
width of subwindow, in pixels.

h
height of subwindow, in pixels.

result
output parameter; written with 0 on failure.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_CALIBRATESUB(0xFFFF FF60)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	h
+12	result

Note: BT817/8 specific command

Examples

```
cmd_dlstart();
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd_text(600, 140, 31, OPT_CENTER, "Please tap on the dot");
//Calibrate a touch screen for 1200x280 screen
cmd_calibratesub(0,0, 1200,280,0);
```

5.61 CMD_SETROTATE

This command is used to rotate the screen.

C prototype

void cmd_setrotate(uint32_t *r*);

Parameters

r
The value from 0 to 7. The same definition as the value in **REG_ROTATE.** Refer to the section Rotation for more details.

Description

CMD_SETROTATE sets **REG_ROTATE** to the given value *r*, causing the screen to rotate. It also appropriately adjusts the touch transform matrix so that coordinates of touch points are adjusted to rotated coordinate system.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SETROTATE (0xFFFF FF36)**
+4	r

Examples

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
cmd_setrotate(2); //Put the display in portrait mode
```

5.62 CMD_SPINNER

This command is used to start an animated spinner. The spinner is an animated overlay that shows the user that some task is continuing. To trigger the spinner, create a display list and then use CMD_SPINNER. The coprocessor engine overlays the spinner on the current display list, swaps the display list to make it visible, then continuously animates until it receives CMD_STOP. REG_MACRO_0 and REG_MACRO_1 registers are utilized to perform the animation kind of effect. The frequency of point's movement is with respect to the display frame rate configured.

Typically for 480x272 display panels the display rate is ~60fps. For style 0 and 60fps, the point repeats the sequence within 2 seconds. For style 1 and 60fps, the point repeats the sequence within 1.25 seconds. For style 2 and 60fps, the clock hand repeats the sequence within 2 seconds. For style 3 and 60fps, the moving dots repeat the sequence within 1 second. Note that only one of **CMD_SKETCH, CMD_SCREENSAVER**, or **CMD_SPINNER** can be active at one time.

C prototype

```
void cmd_spinner(   int16_t x,
                    int16_t y,
                    uint16_t style,
                    uint16_t scale  );
```

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SPINNER(0xFFFF FF16)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	style
+10	scale

Parameters

x
The X coordinate of top left of spinner

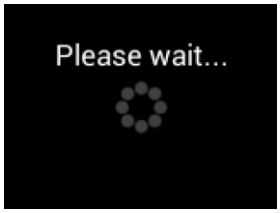
y
The Y coordinate of top left of spinner

style
The style of spinner. Valid range is from 0 to 3.

scale
The scaling coefficient of spinner. 0 means no scaling.

Examples

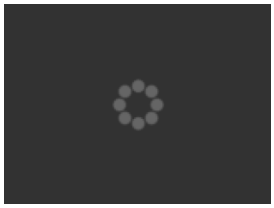
Create a display list, then start the spinner:




```
cmd_dlstart();
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd_text(80,  30,  27,  OPT_CENTER,  "Please
wait...");
cmd_spinner(80, 60, 0, 0);
```

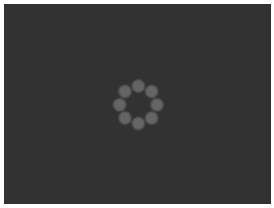

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Spinner style 0, a circle of dots:



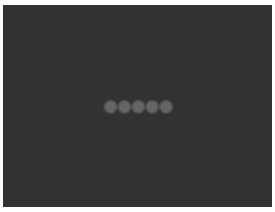
cmd_spinner(80, 60, 0, 0);

Spinner style 0, a circle of dots:



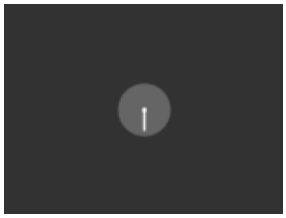
cmd_spinner(80, 60, 0, 0);

Style 1, a line of dots:



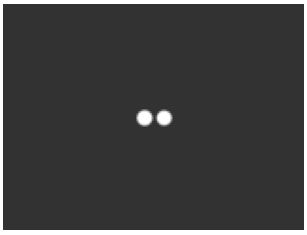
cmd_spinner(80, 60, 1, 0);

Style 2, a rotating clock hand:



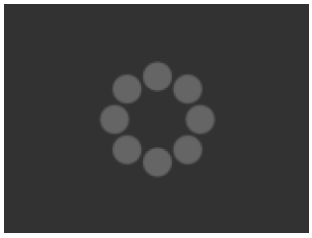
cmd_spinner(80, 60, 2, 0);

Style 3, two orbiting dots:



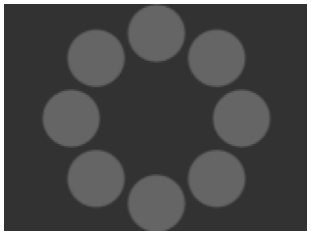
cmd_spinner(80, 60, 3, 0);

Half screen, scale:



cmd_spinner(80, 60, 0, 1);

Full screen, scale 2:



cmd_spinner(80, 60, 0, 2);

5.63 CMD_SCREENSAVER

This command is used to start an animated screensaver. After the screensaver command, the coprocessor engine continuously updates **REG_MACRO_0** with **VERTEX2F** with varying (x,y) coordinates. With an appropriate display list, this causes a bitmap to move around the screen

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

without any MCU work. Command **CMD_STOP** stops the update process. Note that only one of **CMD_SKETCH, CMD_SCREENSAVER, or CMD_SPINNER** can be active at one time.

C prototype

```
void cmd_screensaver( );
```

Description

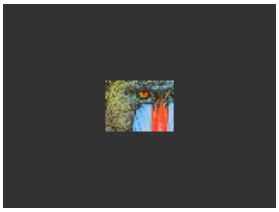
REG_MACRO_0 is updated with respect to frame rate (depending on the display registers configuration). Typically for a 480x272 display the frame rate is around 60 frames per second.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SCREENSAVER(0xFFFF FF2F)**

Examples

To start the screensaver, create a display list using a MACRO instruction – the coprocessor engine will update it continuously:



```
cmd_screensaver();
cmd(BITMAP_SOURCE(0));
cmd(BITMAP_LAYOUT(RGB565, 128, 64));
cmd(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST,BORDER,BORDER, 40, 30));
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(MACRO(0));
cmd(DISPLAY());
```

5.64 CMD_SKETCH

This command is used to start a continuous sketch update. The Coprocessor engine continuously samples the touch inputs and paints pixels into a bitmap, according to the given touch (x, y). This means that the user touch inputs are drawn into the bitmap without any need for MCU work. **CMD_STOP** is to be sent to stop the sketch process.

Note that only one of **CMD_SKETCH, CMD_SCREENSAVER,** or **CMD_SPINNER** can be active at one time.

C prototype

```
void cmd_sketch( int16_t x,
                 int16_t y,
                 uint16_t w,
                 uint16_t h,
                 uint32_t ptr,
                 uint16_t format );
```

Parameters

x
x-coordinate of sketch area top-left, in pixels

y

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

y-coordinate of sketch area top-left, in pixels

w
Width of sketch area, in pixels

h
Height of sketch area, in pixels

ptr
Base address of sketch bitmap

format
Format of sketch bitmap, either L1 or L8

Note: The update frequency of bitmap data located at ptr depends on the sampling frequency of the built-in ADC circuit, which is up to 1000 Hz.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SKETCH(0xFFFF FF30)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	h
+12	ptr
+16	format

Examples

To start sketching into a 480x272 L1 bitmap:

```
cmd_memzero(0, 480 * 272 / 8);
cmd_sketch(0, 0, 480, 272, 0, L1);

//Then to display the bitmap
cmd(BITMAP_SOURCE(0));
cmd(BITMAP_LAYOUT(L1, 60, 272));
cmd(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 480, 272));
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(VERTEX2II(0, 0, 0, 0));

//Finally, to stop sketch updates
cmd_stop();
```

5.65 CMD_STOP

This command is to inform the coprocessor engine to stop the periodic operation, which is triggered by **CMD_SKETCH , CMD_SPINNER** or **CMD_SCREENSAVER**.

C prototype

void cmd_stop( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_STOP(0xFFFF FF17)**

Description

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

For **CMD_SPINNER** and **CMD_SCREENSAVER**, **REG_MACRO_0** and **REG_MACRO_1** updating will be stopped.
For **CMD_SKETCH**, the bitmap data in **RAM_G** updating will be stopped.
Examples

See CMD_SKETCH, CMD_SPINNER, CMD_SCREENSAVER.

5.66 CMD_SETFONT

CMD_SETFONT is used to register one custom defined bitmap font into the coprocessor engine. After registration, the coprocessor engine is able to use the bitmap font with corresponding commands.

Note that **CMD_SETFONT** does not set up the font's bitmap parameters. The MCU should do this before using the font. For further details about how to set up a custom font, refer to ROM and RAM Fonts.

C prototype

```
void cmd_setfont(    uint32_t font,
                     uint32_t ptr );
```

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SETFONT(0xFFFF FF2B)**
+4	font
+8	ptr

Parameters

font
The bitmap handle from 0 to 31

ptr
The metrics block address in **RAM_G**. 4 bytes aligned is required.

Examples

With a suitable font metrics block loaded in **RAM_G** at address 1000, to set it up for use with objects as font 7:

```
cmd(BITMAP_LAYOUT(L8,16, 10));
cmd(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST,BORDER,BORDER, 16, 10));
cmd(BITMAP_SOURCE(1000));
cmd_setfont(7, 1000);
cmd_button( 20, 20,                          // x,y
            120, 40,                         // width,height in pixels
             7,                              // font 7, just loaded
             0,                              // default options,3D style
            "custom font!" );
```

5.67 CMD_SETFONT2

This command is used to set up a custom font. To use a custom font with the coprocessor objects, create the font definition data in **RAM_G** and issue **CMD_SETFONT2**, as described in ROM and RAM Fonts.

Note that **CMD_SETFONT2** sets up the font's bitmap parameters by appending commands **BITMAP_SOURCE,BITMAP_LAYOUT** and **BITMAP_SIZE** to the current display list.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

For details about how to set up a custom font, refer to ROM and RAM Fonts.

C prototype

```
void cmd_setfont2 (uint32_t font,
                   uint32_t ptr,
                   uint32_t firstchar );
```

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SETFONT2(0xFFFF FF3B)**
+4	font
+8	ptr
+12	firstchar

Parameters

font
The bitmap handle from 0 to 31

ptr
32 bit aligned memory address in **RAM_G** of font metrics block

firstchar
The **ASCII** value of first character in the font. **For an extended font block, this should be zero.**

Examples

With a suitable font metrics block loaded in RAM_G at address 100000, first character's ASCII value 32, to use it for font 20:

```
cmd_setfont2(20, 100000, 32);
cmd_button(15, 30, 130, 20, 18, 0, "This is font 18");
cmd_button(15, 60, 130, 20, 20, 0, "This is font 20");
```

5.68 CMD_SETSCRATCH

This command is used to set the scratch bitmap for widget use. Graphical objects use a bitmap handle for rendering. By default this is bitmap handle 15. This command allows it to be set to any bitmap handle. This command enables user to utilize bitmap handle 15 safely.

C prototype

```
void cmd_setscratch( uint32_t handle);
```

Parameters

handle
bitmap handle number, 0~31

Command layout

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

+0	**CMD_SETSCRATCH (0xFFFF FF3C)**
+4	handle

Examples

With the setscratch command, set the handle 31, handle 15 is available for application use, for example as a font:

```
cmd_setscratch(31);
cmd_setfont2(15, 100000, 32);
cmd_button(15, 30, 130, 20, 15, 0, "This is font 15");

//Restore bitmap handle 31 to ROM Font number 31.
cmd_romfont(31, 31);
```

5.69 CMD_ROMFONT

This command is to load a ROM font into bitmap handle. By default ROM fonts 16-31 are loaded into bitmap handles 16-31. This command allows any ROM font 16-34 to be loaded into any bitmap handle.

C prototype

```
void cmd_romfont (uint32_t font,
                  uint32_t romslot );
```

Parameters

font
bitmap handle number , 0~31

romslot
ROM font number, 16~34

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ROMFONT (0xFFFF FF3F)**
+4	font
+8	romslot

Examples

Loading hardware fonts 31-34 into bitmap handle 1:

```
cmd_romfont(1, 31);
cmd_text( 0, 0, 1, 0, "31");
cmd_romfont(1, 32);
cmd_text( 0, 60, 1, 0, "32");
cmd_romfont(1, 33);
cmd_text(80,-14, 1, 0, "33");
cmd_romfont(1, 34);
cmd_text(60, 32, 1, 0, "34");
```

5.70 CMD_RESETFONTS

This command loads bitmap handles 16-31 with their default fonts.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

C prototype

```
void cmd_resetfonts();
```

Parameters

NA

Command layout

+0	**CMD_RESETFONTS (0xFFFF FF52)**

Examples

NA

5.71 CMD_TRACK

This command is used to track touches for a graphics object. **EVE** can assist the **MCU** in tracking touches on graphical objects. For example touches on dial objects can be reported as angles, saving MCU computation. To do this the MCU draws the object using a chosen tag value, and registers a track area for that tag. From then on any touch on that object is reported in **REG_TRACKER**, and multiple touches (if supported by the touch panel) in **REG_TRACKER_1**,**REG_TRACKER_2**, **REG_TRACKER_3**, **REG_TRACKER_4**.

The MCU can detect any touch on the object by reading the 32-bit value in the five registers above. The low 8 bits give the current tag, or zero if there is no touch. The high sixteen bits give the tracked value. For a rotary tracker - used for clocks, gauges and dials - this value is the angle of the touch point relative to the object center, in units of 1/65536 of a circle. 0 means that the angle is straight down, 0x4000 left, 0x8000 up, and 0xc000 right.

For a linear tracker - used for sliders and scrollbars - this value is the distance along the tracked object, from 0 to 65535.

Note: Multiple touch points are only available in BT81X Series with capacitive displays connected.

C prototype

```
void cmd_track(   int16_t x,
                  int16_t y,
                  int16_t w,
                  int16_t h,
                  int16_t tag );
```

Parameters

x
For linear tracker functionality, x-coordinate of track area top-left, in pixels.
For rotary tracker functionality, x-coordinate of track area center, in pixels.

y
For linear tracker functionality, y-coordinate of track area top-left, in pixels.
For rotary tracker functionality, y-coordinate of track area center, in pixels.

w
Width of track area, in pixels.

h
Height of track area, in pixels.

Note: A w and h of (1,1) means that the tracker is rotary, and reports an angle value in

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

REG_TRACKER. A w and h of (0,0) disables the track functionality of the coprocessor engine. Other values mean that the tracker is linear, and reports values along its length from 0 to 65535 in **REG_TRACKER**

tag
tag of the graphics object to be tracked, 1-255

Command layout

+0	**CMD_TRACK(0xFFFF FF2C)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	w
+10	h
+12	tag

Description

The Coprocessor engine tracks the graphics object in rotary tracker mode and linear tracker mode:

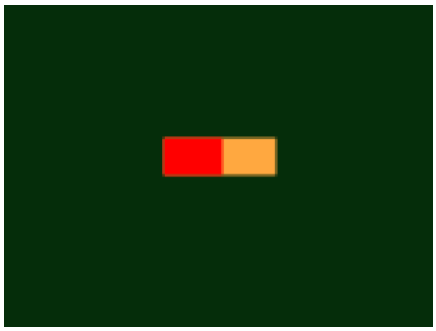
- rotary tracker mode – Track the angle between the touch point and the center of the graphics object specified by the tag value. The value is in units of 1/65536 of a circle. 0 means that the angle is straight down, 0x4000 left, 0x8000 up, and 0xC000 right from the center.

  Linear tracker mode – If parameter w is greater than h, track the relative distance of the touch point to the width of the graphics object specified by the tag value. If parameter w is not greater than h, track the relative distance of touch points to the height of the graphics object specified by the tag value. The value is in units of 1/65536 of the width or height of the graphics object. The distance of the touch point refers to the distance from the top left pixel of graphics object to the coordinate of the touch point.

Please note that the behavior of **CMD_TRACK** is not defined if the center of the track object (in case of rotary track) or top left of the track object (in case of linear track) is outside the visible region in display panel.

Examples

Horizontal track of rectangle dimension 40x12 pixels and the present touch is at 50%:



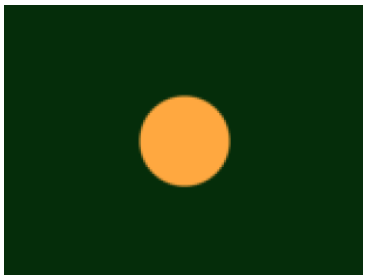
```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( BEGIN(RECTS) );
dl( VERTEX2F(60 * 16,50 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(100 * 16,62 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 0, 0) );
dl( VERTEX2F(60 * 16,50 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(80 * 16,62 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_MASK(0 ,0 ,0 ,0) );
dl( TAG(1) );
dl( VERTEX2F(60 * 16,50 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(100 * 16,62 * 16) );
cmd_track(60 * 16, 50 * 16, 40, 12, 1);
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Vertical track of rectangle dimension 12x40 pixels and the present touch is at 50%:

```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( BEGIN(RECTS) );
dl( VERTEX2F(70 * 16,40 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(82 * 16,80 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 0, 0) );
dl( VERTEX2F(70 * 16,40 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(82 * 16,60 * 16) );
dl( COLOR_MASK(0 ,0 ,0 ,0) );
dl( TAG(1) );
dl( VERTEX2F(70 * 16,40 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(82 * 16,80 * 16) );
cmd_track(70 * 16, 40 * 16, 12, 40, 1);
```

Circular track centered at (80,60) display location



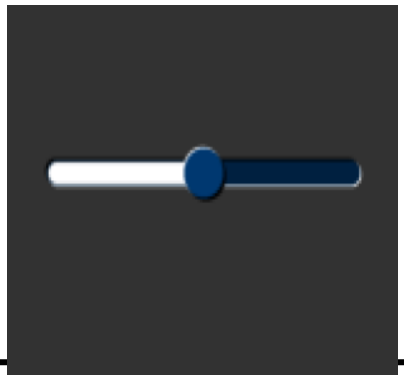
```
dl( CLEAR_COLOR_RGB(5, 45, 110) );
dl( COLOR_RGB(255, 168, 64) );
dl( CLEAR(1 ,1 ,1) );
dl( TAG(1) );
dl( BEGIN(POINTS) );
dl( POINT_SIZE(20 * 16) );
dl( VERTEX2F(80 * 16, 60 * 16) );
cmd_track(80 * 16, 60 * 16, 1, 1, 1);
```

To draw a dial with tag 33 centered at (80, 60), adjustable by touch:

```
uint16_t angle = 0x8000;
cmd_track(80, 60, 1, 1, 33);
while (1) {
  cmd(TAG(33));
  cmd_dial(80, 60, 55, 0, angle);

  uint32_t tracker = rd32(REG_TRACKER);
  if ((tracker & 0xff) == 33)
     angle = tracker >> 16;
}
```

To make an adjustable slider with tag 34:



```
uint16_t val = 0x8000;
cmd_track(20, 50, 120, 8, 34);
while (1) {
  cmd(TAG(34));
  cmd_slider(20, 50, 120, 8, val, 65535);

  uint32_t tracker = rd32(REG_TRACKER);
  if ((tracker & 0xff) == 34)
     val = tracker >> 16;
}
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.72 CMD_SNAPSHOT

This command causes the coprocessor engine to take a snapshot of the current screen, and write the result into **RAM_G** as an **ARGB4** bitmap. The size of the bitmap is the size of the screen, given by the **REG_HSIZE** and **REG_VSIZE** registers.

During the snapshot process, the display should be disabled by setting **REG_PCLK** to 0 to avoid display glitch. Since the coprocessor engine needs to write the result into the destination address, the destination address must never be used or referenced by the graphics engine.

C prototype

void cmd_snapshot(uint32_t ptr);

Parameters

ptr
Snapshot destination address, in **RAM_G**

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SNAPSHOT(0xFFFF FF1F)**
+4	ptr

Examples

To take a snapshot of the current 160 x 120 screens, then use it as a bitmap in the new display list:

```
wr(REG_PCLK,0);//Turn off the PCLK
wr16(REG_HSIZE,120);
wr16(REG_WSIZE,160);

cmd_snapshot(0);//Taking snapshot.

wr(REG_PCLK,5);//Turn on the PCLK
wr16(REG_HSIZE,272);
wr16(REG_WSIZE,480);

cmd_dlstart();
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd(BITMAP_SOURCE(0));
cmd(BITMAP_LAYOUT(ARGB4, 2 * 160, 120));
cmd(BITMAP_SIZE(NEAREST, BORDER, BORDER, 160, 120));
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(VERTEX2II(10, 10, 0, 0));
```

5.73 CMD_SNAPSHOT2

The snapshot command causes the coprocessor to take a snapshot of part of the current screen, and write it into graphics memory as a bitmap. The size, position and format of the bitmap may be specified. During the snapshot process, the display output process is suspended. LCD displays can easily tolerate variation in display timing, so there is no noticeable flicker.

C prototype

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
void cmd_snapshot2( uint32_t fmt,
                    uint32_t ptr,
                    int16_t  x,
                    int16_t  y,
                    int16_t  w,
                    int16_t  h);
```

Parameters

fmt
Output bitmap format, one of **RGB565, ARGB4** or **0x20**. The value **0x20** produces an **ARGB8** format snapshot.

Refer to BITMAP_LAYOUT for format List.

ptr
Snapshot destination address, in **RAM_G**

x
x-coordinate of snapshot area top-left, in pixels

y
y-coordinate of snapshot area top-left, in pixels

w
width of snapshot area, in pixels. Note when *fmt* is **0x20**, i.e. in **ARGB8** format, the value of width shall be doubled.

h
height of snapshot area, in pixels

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SNAPSHOT2(0xFFFF FF37)**
+4	fmt
+8	ptr
+12	x
+14	y
+16	w
+18	h

Examples

To take a 32x32 snapshot of the top-left of the screen, then use it as a bitmap in the new display list:

```
cmd_snapshot2(RGB565, 0, 0, 0, 32, 32);
cmd_dlstart();
cmd_setbitmap(0, RGB565, 32, 32);
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(VERTEX2II(10, 10, 0, 0));
```

Note: For ARGB8 **format, pixel memory layout is as below:**

ARGB8 Pixel Format							
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Alpha Channel	Red Channel	Green Channel	Blue Channel

5.74 CMD_SETBITMAP

This command will generate the corresponding display list commands for given bitmap information, sparing the effort of writing display list manually. The display list commands to be generated candidates are as below:

- **BITMAP_SOURCE**
- **BITMAP_LAYOUT/ BITMAP_LAYOUT_H**
- **BITMAP_SIZE/ BITMAP_SIZE_H**
- **BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT**

The parameters filter/wrapx/wrapy in **BITAMP_SIZE** are always set to **NEAREST/BORDER/BORDER** value in the generated display list commands.

C prototype

```
void cmd_setbitmap(   uint32_t  source,
                      uint16_t  fmt,
                      uint16_t  width,
                      uint16_t  height  );
```

Parameters

source
Source address for bitmap, in **RAM_G** or flash memory, as a **BITMAP_SOURCE** parameter**.** it shall be in terms of block unit (each block is 32 bytes) when it is located in flash memory.

fmt
Bitmap format, see the definition in **BITMAP_EXT_FORMAT**.

width
bitmap width, in pixels. 2 bytes value.

height
bitmap height, in pixels. 2 bytes value.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_SETBITMAP(0xFFFF FF43)**
+4	source
+8	fmt
+10	width
+12	height

Examples

Display an ASTC image with width 35 and height 35 pixels residing in flash address 6016 (188 * 32):

```
cmd_dlstart();
cmd_setbitmap(0x800000 | 188, COMPRESSED_RGBA_ASTC_5x5_KHR, 35, 35);
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(VERTEX2II(10, 10, 0, 0));
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Note:
Two bytes needs to be appended after last parameter for 4 bytes alignment.

When format is **PALETTED4444/PALETTED8/PALETTED565**, due to no display list commands **PALETTE_SOURCE** is generated, user need write the **PALETTE_SOURCE** command manually.

5.75 CMD_LOGO

The logo command causes the coprocessor engine to play back a short animation of the Bridgetek logo. During logo playback the MCU shall not write or render any display list. After 2.5 seconds have elapsed, the coprocessor engine writes zero to **REG_CMD_READ** and **REG_CMD_WRITE**, and starts waiting for commands. After this command is complete, the MCU shall write the next command to the starting address of **RAM_CMD**.

C prototype

void cmd_logo( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_LOGO(0xFFFF FF31)**

Examples

To play back the logo animation:

```
cmd_logo();
delay(3000); // Optional to wait
//Wait till both read & write pointer register are equal.
While(rd16(REG_CMD_WRITE) != rd16(REG_CMD_READ));
```

5.76 CMD_FLASHERASE

This command erases the attached flash storage.

C prototype

void cmd_flasherase( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHERASE(0xFFFF FF44)**

Examples

NA

5.77 CMD_FLASHWRITE

This command writes the following inline data to flash storage. The storage should have been previously erased using **CMD_FLASHERASE**.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

C prototype

```
void cmd_flashwrite( uint32_t  ptr,
                     uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

ptr
Destination address in flash memory. Must be 256-byte aligned. Start address of first block is from **zero**.

num
Number of bytes to write, must be multiple of 256

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHEWRTITE (0xFFFF FF45)**
+4	ptr
+8	num
+12…n	$bytes_1$ …$byte_n$

Examples

NA

5.78 CMD_FLASHPROGRAM

This command writes the data to blank flash. It assumes that the flash is previously programmed to all-ones, which is the default state of flash chip by manufacturers.

C prototype

```
void cmd_flashprogram( uint32_t  dest,
                       uint32_t  src,
                       uint32_t  num );
```

Parameters

dst
destination address in flash memory. Must be 4096-byte aligned. Start address of first block is from **zero**.

src
source data in main memory. Must be 4-byte aligned

num
number of bytes to write, must be multiple of 4096

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHEPROGRAM (0xFFFF FF70)**
+4	dst
+8	src
+12	num

Examples

NA

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.79 CMD_FLASHREAD

This command reads data from flash into main memory.

C prototype

```
void cmd_flashread ( uint32_t  dest,
                     uint32_t  src,
                     uint32_t  num );
```

Parameters

dest
Destination address in **RAM_G**. Must be 4-byte aligned.
Start address of first block is from **zero**.

src
source address in flash memory. Must be 64-byte aligned.

num
number of bytes to write, must be multiple of 4

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHEREAD(0xFFFF FF46)**
+4	dest
+8	src
+12	num

Examples

```
// Read all of main RAM (1M bytes) from flash:
cmd_flashread(0, 4096, 1048576);
```

5.80 CMD_APPENDF

This command appends data from flash to the next available location in display list memory RAM_DL, which was specified by REG_CMD_WRITE.

C prototype

```
void cmd_appendf( uint32_t ptr,uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

ptr
start of source commands in flash memory. Must be 64-byte aligned.
Start address of first block is from **zero**.

num
number of bytes to copy. This must be a multiple of 4

Command layout

+0	**CMD_APPENDF (0xFFFF FF59)**
+4	ptr
+8	num

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.81 CMD_FLASHUPDATE

This command writes the given data to flash. If the data matches the existing contents of flash, nothing is done. Otherwise the flash is erased in 4K units, and the data is written.

C prototype

```
void cmd_flashupdate (  uint32_t  dest,
                        uint32_t  src,
                        uint32_t  num );
```

Parameters

dest
Destination address in flash memory. Must be 4096-byte aligned.
Start address of first block is from **zero**.

src
source address in main memory **RAM_G**. Must be 4-byte aligned.

num
number of bytes to write, must be multiple of 4096

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHUPDATE (0xFFFF FF47)**
+4	dest
+8	src
+12	num

Example

```
// The pseudo code below shows how to program the blob file to first block of flash

// Assume the flash is in detach mode and now attach it
cmd_flashattach();

// Now check if the flash is in basic mode after attaching
while (FLASH_STATUS_BASIC != rd8(REG_FLASH_STATUS));

//Write the BLOB file into the first block of flash
//Assume the BLOB file is in RAM_G
cmd_flashupdate(0, RAM_G, 4096);

// To check if the blob is valid , try to switch to full mode
cmd_flashfast(0);

while (FLASH_STATUS_BASIC != rd8(REG_FLASH_FULL));
```

5.82 CMD_FLASHDETACH

This command causes **EVE** to put the SPI device lines into hi-Z state. The only valid flash operations when detached are the low-level SPI access commands as following:

- **CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL**
- **CMD_FLASHSPITX**
- **CMD_FLASHSPIRX**
- **CMD_FLASHATTACH**

Refer to the section - Flash interface in BT817/8 datasheet.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

C prototype

void cmd_flashdetach( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHDETACH (0xFFFF FF48)**

5.83 CMD_FLASHATTACH

This command causes **EVE** to re-connect to the attached SPI flash storage. After the command, register **REG_FLASH_STATE** should be **FLASH_STATUS_BASIC**. Refer to the section - Flash interface in BT817/8 datasheet.

C prototype

void cmd_flashattach( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHATTACH (0xFFFF FF49)**

5.84 CMD_FLASHFAST

This command causes the BT81X chip to drive the attached flash in full-speed mode, if possible. Refer to the section - Flash interface in BT817/8 datasheet.

C prototype

void cmd_flashfast (uint32_t result);

Parameters

result
Written with the result code. If the command succeeds, zero is written as a result.

Otherwise an error code is set as follows:

Error Code	Meaning
0xE001	flash is not supported
0xE002	no header detected in sector 0 – is flash blank?
0xE003	sector 0 data failed integrity check
0xE004	device/blob mismatch – was correct blob loaded?
0xE005	failed full-speed test – check board wiring

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHFAST (0xFFFF FF4A)**
+4	result

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Note: To access any data in flash by EVE, host needs send this command at least once to EVE in order to drive flash in full-speed mode. In addition, the flash chip is assumed to have correct blob file programmed in its first block (4096 bytes). Otherwise, it will cause the failure of this command.

Example

NA

5.85 CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL

This command de-asserts the SPI CS signal. It is only valid when the flash has been detached, using **CMD_FLASHDETACH**.

C prototype

void cmd_flashspidesel ();

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHSPIDESEL (0xFFFFFF4B)**

Parameters

NA

5.86 CMD_FLASHSPITX

This command transmits the following bytes over the flash SPI interface. It is only valid when the flash has been detached, using **CMD_FLASHDETACH**.

C prototype

oid cmd_flashspitx (uint32_t num);

Parameters

num
number of bytes to transmit

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHSPITX (0xFFFF FF4C)**
+4	num
byte1…byten	the data to transmit

Example

Transmit single-byte 06:

```
cmd_flashdetach();
cmd_flashspidesel();
cmd_flashspitx(1);
cmd(0x00000006);
```

5.87 CMD_FLASHSPIRX

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

This command receives bytes from the flash SPI interface, and writes them to main memory. It is only valid when the flash has been detached, using **CMD_FLASHDETACH.**

C prototype

```
void cmd_flashspirx (   uint32_t ptr,
                        uint32_t num );
```

Parameters

ptr
destination address in **RAM_G**

num
number of bytes to receive

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHSPIRX (0xFFFF FF4D)**
+4	ptr
+4	num

Example

Read 3 bytes from SPI flash to main memory locations 100,101,102:

```
cmd_flashdetach();
cmd_flashspidesel();
cmd_flashspirx(100, 3);
```

5.88 CMD_CLEARCACHE

This command clears the graphics engine's internal flash cache. It should be executed after modifying graphics data in flash by **CMD_FLASHUPDATE** or **CMD_FLASHWRITE**, otherwise bitmaps from flash may render "stale" data. It must be executed when the display list is empty, immediately after a **CMD_DLSTART** command. Otherwise it generates a coprocessor fault ("display list must be empty") and sets **REG_PCLK** to zero.

C prototype

```
void cmd_clearcache (  );
```

Command layout

+0	**CMD_CLEARCACHE (0xFFFF FF4F)**

Example

```
//Flash is in Full mode and has the right content working with EVE
//Update the 4th block of flash chip with new bitmap data located at RAM_G+1024
cmd_flashupdate(4*4096, RAM_G+1024, 4*4096);

//To continue rendering the  bitmap data in flash, need call cmd_clearcache
cmd_dlstart();
cmd_clearcache();
cmd_swap();
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.89 CMD_FLASHSOURCE

This command specifies the source address for flash data loaded by the **CMD_LOADIMAGE**, **CMD_PLAYVIDEO**, **CMD_VIDEOSTARTF** and **CMD_INFLATE2** commands with the **OPT_FLASH** option.

C prototype

void cmd_flashsource (uint32_t ptr);

Parameters

ptr
flash address, must be 64-byte aligned. Start address of first block is from **zero**.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FLASHSOURCE (0xFFFF FF4E)**
+4	ptr

5.90 CMD_VIDEOSTARTF

This command is used to initialize video frame decoder. The video data shall be present in flash memory, and its address previously set using **CMD_FLASHSOURCE**. This command processes the video header information, and completes when it has consumed it.

C prototype

void cmd_videostartf ( );

Command layout

+0	**CMD_VIDEOSTARTF (0xFFFF FF5F)**

Example

```
cmd_flashsource(LOGO_VIDEO_FLASH_ADDRESS);
cmd_videostartf();
cmd_videoframe(4, 0);
```

5.91 CMD_ANIMSTART

This command is used to start an animation. If the channel was previously in use, the previous animation is replaced.

C prototype

```
void cmd_animstart(    int32_t  ch,
                       uint32_t aoptr,
                       uint32_t loop   );
```

Parameters

ch

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Animation channel, 0-31. If no channel is available, then an "out of channels" exception is raised.

aoptr
The address of the animation object in flash memory.

loop
Loop flags. ANIM_ONCE plays the animation once, then cancel it. ANIM_LOOP pays the animation in a loop. ANIM_HOLD plays the animation once, then displays the final frame.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ANIMSTART (0xFFFF FF53)**
+4	ch
+8	aoptr
+12	loop

Example

See CMD_ANIMFRAME.

5.92 CMD_ANIMSTARTRAM

This command is used to start an animation in RAM_G. If the channel was previously in use, the previous animation is replaced. The animation object is in **RAM_G**.

C prototype

```
void cmd_animstartram( int32_t   ch,
                       uint32_t aoptr,
                       uint32_t loop );
```

Parameters

ch
Animation channel, 0-31. If no channel is available, then an "out of channels" exception is raised.

aoptr
Pointer to the animation object in RAM. Must be 64-byte aligned.

loop
Loop flags. ANIM_ONCE plays the animation once, then cancels it. ANIM LOOP plays the animation in a loop. ANIM_HOLD plays the animation once, then displays the final frame.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ANIMSTARTRAM(0xFFFF FF6E)**
+4	ch
+8	aoptr
+12	loop

Example

See CMD_ANIMFRAMERAM.

Note: BT817/8 specific command

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.93 CMD_RUNANIM

This command is used to Play/run animations until complete. Playback ends when either a specified animation completes, or when host **MCU** writes to a control byte. Note that only animations started with **ANIM_ONCE** complete. Pseudocode for **CMD_RUNANIM** is:

```
do {
   if ((play != -1) && (*play != 0))
         break;
   CMD_DLSTART();
   Clear(1,1,1);
   CMD_ANIMDRAW(-1);
   CMD_SWAP();

} while ((waitmask & REG_ANIM_ACTIVE) == 0);
```

C prototype

```
void cmd_runram(  uint32_t waitmask,
                  uint32_t play  );
```

Parameters

waitmask
32-bit mask specifying which animation channels to wait for. Animation ends when the logical **AND** of this mask and **REG_ANIM_ACTIVE** is zero.

play
Address of play control byte. Animation stops when the byte at play is not zero. If this feature is not required, the special value of -1 (0xFFFF FFFF) means that there is no control byte.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_RUNANIM(0xFFFF FF6F)**
+4	waitmask
+8	play

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Example

```
/***
play back several animations simultaneously
assume the animation is in flash
***/

/*
set up an channel for first animation
*/

cmd_animstart(1,4096, ANIM_ONCE);
cmd_animxy(400, 240); //The center of animation

/*
set up another channel for second animation
*/
cmd_animstart(2,4096 + 10*1024, ANIM_ONCE);
cmd_animxy(400, 240); //The center of animation
/*
set up another channel for second animation
*/
cmd_animstart(2,4096 + 10*1024, ANIM_ONCE);
cmd_animxy(400, 240); //The center of animation

/*
play back both animations and set up the control byte at 0xF0000 of RAM_G
*/
wr32(0xF0000, 1);
cmd_runanim(-1, 0xF0000); //The animation will be shown on display.

//......

/*
To stop the animation before it ends , write the contro byte to zerol
*/
wr32(0xF0000, 0);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.94 CMD_ANIMSTOP

This command stops one or more active animations.

C prototype

void cmd_animstop(int32_t ch);

Parameters

ch
Animation channel, 0-31. If ch is -1, then all animations are stopped.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ANIMSTOP (0xFFFF FF54)**
+4	ch

5.95 CMD_ANIMXY

This command sets the coordinates of an animation.

C prototype

```
void cmd_animxy (  int32_t  ch,
                   int16_t  x,
                   int16_t  y  );
```

Parameters

ch
Animation channel, 0-31.

x
x screen coordinate for the animation center, in pixels

y
y screen coordinate for the animation center, in pixels

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ANIMXY (0xFFFF FF55)**
+4	ch
+8	x
+10	y

NOTE: If the pixel precision is not set to 1/16 in current graphics context, a **VERTEX_FOMART(4)** is mandatory to precede this command.

5.96 CMD_ANIMDRAW

This command draws one or more active animations

C prototype

```
void cmd_animdraw (  int32_t  ch  );
```

Parameters

ch
Animation channel, 0-31. If ch is -1, then it draws all undrawn animations in ascending order.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ANIMDRAW(0xFFFF FF56)**
+4	ch

5.97 CMD_ANIMFRAME

This command draws the specified frame of an animation

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

C prototype

```
void cmd_animframe ( int16_t  x,
                     int16_t  y,
                     uint32_t  aoptr,
                     uint32_t  frame  );
```

Parameters

x
x screen coordinate for the animation center, in pixels.

y
y screen coordinate for the animation center, in pixels.

aoptr
The address of the animation object in flash memory.

frame
Frame number to draw, starting from zero.

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ANIMFRAME (0xFFFF FF5A)**
+4	x
+6	y
+8	aoptr
+12	frame

NOTE: If the pixel precision is not set to 1/16 in current graphics context, a **VERTEX_FOMART(4)** is mandatory to precede this command.

Example

```
//Draw a frame located at the first available address of flash onto (0,400).
cmd_animframe(0, 400, 4096, 65);
```

5.98 CMD_ANIMFRAMERAM

This command draws the specified frame of an animation in **RAM**.

C prototype

```
void cmd_animframe ( int16_t  x,
                     int16_t  y,
                     uint32_t  aoptr,
                     uint32_t  frame );
```

Parameters

x
x screen coordinate for the animation center, in pixels.

y
y screen coordinate for the animation center, in pixels.

aoptr
The address of the animation object in **RAM_G**. Must be 64-byte aligned.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

frame
Frame number to draw, starting from zero.

Command layout

+0	CMD_ANIMFRAMERAM (0xFFFF FF6D)
+4	x
+6	y
+8	aoptr
+12	frame

Note: If the pixel precision is not set to 1/16 in current graphics context, a **VERTEX_FOMART(4)** is mandatory to precede this command.

Example

```
//Draw the 65th frame of the animation onto (400,240).The animation
object is in RAM_G+4096
cmd animframeram(400, 240, 4096, 65);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.99 CMD_SYNC

This command waits for the end of the video scan out period, then it returns immediately. It may be used to synchronize screen updates that are not part of a display list, and to accurately measure the time taken to render a frame.

C prototype

void cmd_sync( );

Command layout

+0	CMD_SYNC(0xFFFF FF42)

Examples

```
//To synchronize with a frame:
cmd_sync();

//To update REG_MACRO_0 at the end of scan out, to avoid tearing:
cmd_sync();
cmd_memwrite(REG_MACRO_0, 4);
cmd(value);

//To measure frame duration
cmd_sync();
cmd_memcpy(0, REG_CLOCK, 4);
cmd_sync();
cmd_memcpy(4, REG_CLOCK, 4);
//the difference between locations 4 and 0 give the frame interval
in clocks.
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.100 CMD_BITMAP_TRANSFORM

This command computes a bitmap transform and appends commands BITMAP_TRANSFORM_A – BITMAP_TRANSFORM_F to the display list. It computes the transform given three corresponding points in screen space and bitmap space. Using these three points, the command computes a matrix that transforms the bitmap coordinates into screen space, and appends the display list commands to set the bitmap matrix.

C prototype

```
void cmd_bitmap_transform( int32_t x0,
                           int32_t y0,
                           int32_t x1,
                           int32_t y1,
                           int32_t x2,
                           int32_t y2,
                           int32_t tx0,
                           int32_t ty0,
                           int32_t tx1,
                           int32_t ty1,
                           int32_t tx2,
                           int32_t ty2,
                           uint16_t result )
```

Command layout

+0	**CMD_BITMAP_TRANSFORM(0xFFFF FF21)**
+4	x_0
+8	y_0
+10	x_1
+16	y_1
+20	x_2
+24	y_2
+28	tx_0
+32	ty_0
+36	tx_1
+40	ty_1
+44	tx_2
+48	ty_2
+52	result

Parameters

x_0,y_0
Point 0 screen coordinate, in pixels

x_1,y_1
Point 1 screen coordinate, in pixels

x_2,y_2
Point 2 screen coordinate, in pixels

tx_0,ty_0
Point 0 bitmap coordinate, in pixels

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

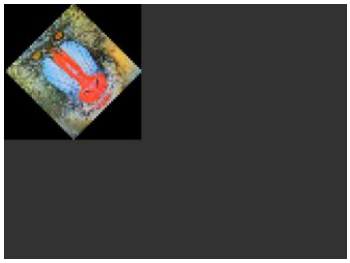
tx_1,ty_1
Point 1 bitmap coordinate, in pixels

tx_2,ty_2
Point 2 bitmap coordinate, in pixels

result
result return. Set to -1 on success, or 0 if it is not possible to find the solution matrix.

Examples

Transform a 64x64 bitmap:

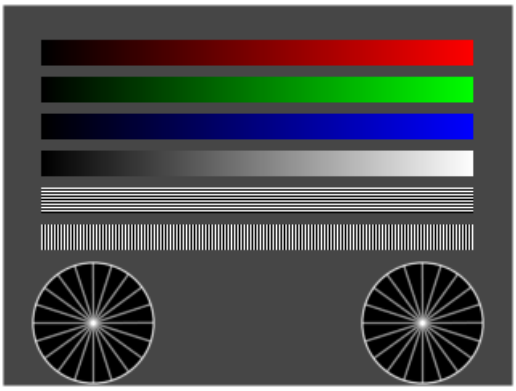


```
cmd(BLEND_FUNC(ONE, ZERO));
cmd_bitmap_transform(32,0, 64,32, 32,64,0,0,
0,64, 64,64, 0);
cmd(BEGIN(BITMAPS));
cmd(VERTEX2II(0, 0, 0, 0));
```

5.101 CMD_TESTCARD

The testcard command loads a display list with a testcard graphic, and executes **CMD_SWAP** - swap the current display list to display it. The graphic is automatically scaled for the current display size, taking into account **REG_HSIZE, REG_VSIZE,** and **REG_ROTATE**. Features of the testcard are:

- **white border at the extents to confirm screen edges and clock stability**
- **red, green, blue and white gradients to confirm color bit depth**
- **horizontal and vertical checker patterns to confirm signal integrity**
- **circle graphics to confirm aspect ratio**
- **radial line pattern to confirm antialias performance**



C prototype

void cmd_testcard ( )

Command layout

+0	**CMD_TESTCARD(0xFFFF FF61)**

Parameters

NA

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Examples

```
//To display a test card, call the command:
cmd_testcard();
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.102 CMD_WAIT

This command waits for a specified number of microseconds. Delays of more than 1s (1000000 µs) are not supported.

C prototype

void cmd_wait (uint32_t us)

Command layout

+0	**CMD_WAIT(0xFFFF FF65)**
+4	us

Parameters

us
Delay time, in microseconds

Examples

```
//To delay for 16.7 ms:
cmd_wait(16700);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.103 CMD_NEWLIST

This command starts the compilation of a command list into **RAM_G**. Instead of being executed, the following commands are appended to the list, until the following **CMD_ENDLIST**. The list can then be called with **CMD_CALLIST**. The following commands are not supported in command lists. Their behavior is undefined:

- **CMD_FLASHSPITX**
- **CMD_FLASHWRITE**
- **CMD_INFLATE**
- **CMD_NEWLIST**

The following commands are supported only when using **OPT_MEDIAFIFO**:

- **CMD_INFLATE2**
- **CMD_LOADIMAGE**
- **CMD_PLAYVIDEO**

C prototype

void cmd_newlist (uint32_t a)

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Command layout

+0	**CMD_NEWLIST(0xFFFF FF68)**
+4	a

Parameters

a
memory address of start of command list

Examples

```
/***
Create a command list at RAM_G address 0xF0000 by
sending the following commands to command buffer
***/
cmd_newlist(RAM_G + 0xF0000);
cmd(COLOR_RGB(255, 100, 0));
cmd_button(20, 20, 60, 60, 30, 0, "OK!");
cmd_endlist();

//......

/***
Invoke the command list
***/
cmd_dlstart();
cmd(COLOR_RGB(255, 255, 255));
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd_calllist(RAM_G + 0xF0000);
cmd(DISPLAY());
cmd_swap();
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.104 CMD_ENDLIST

This command terminates the compilation of a command list into **RAM_G**. **CMD_GETPTR** can be used to find the first unused memory address following the command list..

C prototype

void cmd_endlist ( )

Command layout

+0	**CMD_ENDLIST(0xFFFF FF69)**

Examples

See CMD_NEWLIST.

Note: BT817/8 specific command

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

5.105 CMD_CALLLIST

This command calls a command list. After this command, all the commands compiled into the command list between **CMD_NEWLIST** and **CMD_ENDLIST** are executed, as if they were executed at the point of the **CMD_CALLLIST**. The command list itself may contain **CMD_CALLLIST** commands, up to a depth of 4 levels.

C prototype

void cmd_calllist (uint32_t a)

Command layout

+0	**CMD_CALLLIST(0xFFFF FF67)**
+4	a

Parameters

a
memory address of the command list

Examples

See CMD_NEWLIST.

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.106 CMD_RETURN

This command ends a command list. Normally it is not needed by the user, because **CMD_ENDLIST** appends **CMD_RETURN** to the command list. However it may be used in situations where the user is constructing command lists offline.

C prototype

void cmd_return ( )

Command layout

+0	**CMD_RETURN(0xFFFF FF66)**

Examples

```
/***
Construct a command list in RAM_G to show a button
***/
wr32(RAM_G + 0 * 4, SAVE_CONTEXT());
wr32(RAM_G + 1 * 4, COLOR_RGB(125, 125, 128));
wr32(RAM_G + 2 * 4, CMD_BUTTON);

wr16(RAM_G + 3 * 4, 160);      //x coordinate of button
wr16(RAM_G + 3 * 4 + 2, 160); //y coordinate of button
wr16(RAM_G + 4 * 4, 123);      //w
wr16(RAM_G + 4 * 4 + 2, 234); //h
wr16(RAM_G + 5 * 4, 31);       //Font handle
wr16(RAM_G + 5 * 4 + 2, 0);    //option parameter of cmd_button
wr8(RAM_G + 6 * 4, 'T');
```


Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

```
wr8(RAM_G + 6 * 4 + 1, 'E');
wr8(RAM_G + 6 * 4 + 2, 'S');
wr8(RAM_G + 6 * 4 + 3, 'T');

wr8(RAM_G + 7 * 4, '\0');     //the null terminators for string "TEST"

//Append extra 3 bytes for alignment purpose
wr8(RAM_G + 7 * 4 + 1, '\0');
wr8(RAM_G + 7 * 4 + 2, '\0');
wr8(RAM_G + 7 * 4 + 3, '\0');


wr32(phost, RAM_G + 8 * 4, RESTORE_CONTEXT());
wr32(phost, RAM_G + 9 * 4, CMD_RETURN);  //Indicate the end of command list

//......


/***
Invoke the command list in RAM_G to render the button
***/
cmd_dlstart();
cmd(COLOR_RGB(255, 255, 255));
cmd(CLEAR(1,1,1));
cmd_calllist(RAM_G);
cmd(DISPLAY());
cmd_swap();
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.107 CMD_FONTCACHE

This command enables the font cache, which loads all the bitmaps (glyph) used by a flash-based font into a **RAM_G** area. This eliminates flash bitmap rendering, at the expense of using some **RAM_G**. The area must be sized to hold all the bitmaps used in **two** consecutive frames. It applies to **ASTC** based custom font only.

C prototype

```
void cmd_fontcache( uint32_t font,
                    int32_t ptr,
                    uint32_t num );
```

Command layout

+0	**CMD_FONTCACHE(0xFFFF FF6B)**
+4	font
+8	ptr
+12	num

Parameters

font
font handle to cache. Must be an extended format font.

ptr
Start of cache area, 64-byte aligned.

num
Size of cache area in bytes, 4 byte aligned. Must be at least 16 Kbytes.

Examples

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

To cache font 13 with a 64 Kbyte font cache at the top of memory:

```
cmd_fontache(13, 0xf0000, 0x10000);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.108 CMD_FONTCACHEQUERY

This command queries the capacity and utilization of the font cache.

C prototype

```
void cmd_fontcachequery( uint32_t total,
                         int32_t   used );
```

Command layout

+0	CMD_FONTCACHEQUERY(0xFFFF FF6C)
+4	total
+8	used

Parameters

total
Output parameter; Total number of available bitmaps in the cache, in bytes.

used
Output parameter; Number of used bitmaps in the cache, in bytes

Examples

```
uint32_t total, used;
uint16_t ram_fifo_offset = rd16(REG_CMD_WRITE);
cmd_fontachequery(total, used);

total = rd32(RAM_CMD + (ram_fifo_offset + 4) % 4096);
used  = rd32(RAM_CMD + (ram_fifo_offset + 8) % 4096);

printf("Font cache usage: %d / %d", used, total);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.109 CMD_GETIMAGE

This command returns all the attributes of the bitmap made by the previous CMD_LOADIMAGE, CMD_PLAYVIDEO, CMD_VIDEOSTART or CMD_VIDEOSTARTF.

C prototype

```
void cmd_getimage(  uint32_t source,
                    uint32_t fmt,
                    uint32_t w,
                    uint32_t h,
                    uint32_t palette );
```

Command layout

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

+0	CMD_GETIMAGE (0xFFFF FF64)
+4	source
+8	fmt
+12	w
+16	h
+20	palette

Parameters

source
Output parameter; source address of bitmap.

fmt
Output parameter; format of the bitmap

w
Width of bitmap, in pixels

h
Height of bitmap, in pixels

palette
Palette data of the bitmap if fmt is PALETTED565 or PALETTED4444. Otherwise zero.

Examples

```
//To find the base address and dimensions of the previously loaded image
uint32_t source, fmt, w, h, palette;
uint16_t ram_fifo_offset = rd16(REG_CMD_WRITE);

cmd_getimage(src, fmt, w, h, palette);

src = rd32(RAM_CMD + (ram_fifo_offset) + 4 % 4096);
fmt = rd32(RAM_CMD + (ram_fifo_offset) + 8 % 4096);
w   = rd32(RAM_CMD + (ram_fifo_offset) + 12 % 4096);
h   = rd32(RAM_CMD + (ram_fifo_offset) + 16 % 4096);
palette   = rd32(RAM_CMD + (ram_fifo_offset + 20) % 4096);

cmd_setbitmap(src, fmt, w, h);
if (palette != 0) PaletteSource(palette);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.110 CMD_HSF

C prototype

void cmd_hsf(uint32_t w);

Command layout

+0	CMD_HSF (0xFFFF FF62)
+4	w

Parameters

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

w
Output pixel width, which must be less than REG_HSIZE. 0 disables HSF.

Examples

A popular panel format is 800×480. This gives a logical aspect ratio of

$$800/480 = 1.6667$$

However the physical size of the panel is 153.84 × 85.63mm, giving an aspect ratio of 1.796. This difference means that the panel has non-square pixels. So we can compute the logical width of the panel, keeping the height constant:

$$480 \times (153.84/85.63) = 862.3$$

So by rendering all graphics at 862×480 then resizing to 800×480, all drawing can assume square pixels. To configure this panel, set REG HSIZE to 862, then issue this command:

```
cmd_hsf(800);
```

To disable the HSF, do:

```
cmd_hsf(0);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

5.111 CMD_PCLKFREQ

This command sets **REG_PCLK_FREQ** to generate the closest possible frequency to the one requested. If no suitable frequency can be found, the result field is zero and **REG_PCLK_FREQ** is unchanged.

C prototype

```
void cmd_pclkfreq(  uint32_t ftarget,
                    int32_t  rounding,
                    uint32_t factual  );
```

Command layout

+0	**CMD_PCLKFREQ (0xFFFF FF6A)**
+4	ftarget
+8	rounding
+12	factual

Parameters

ftarget
Target frequency, in Hz.

rounding
Approximation mode. Valid values are 0, -1, 1:
0 is nearest,
-1 is highest frequency less than or equal to target,
1 is lowest frequency greater than or equal to target.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

factual
Output parameter; Actual frequency achieved. If no frequency was found, it is zero.

Important Note:
When using this command, the flash BLOB is required in order to ensure that the calculated PLL2 setting remains within the specification of 228MHz. Therefore, before using this command, ensure that the following steps have been taken:

- External Flash chip connected to the BT817/8
- External Flash chip has the BLOB installed in the first 4096 bytes beginning at 0
- External Flash chip has been set to full-speedmode

It is also possible to set the REG_PCLK_FREQ by writing directly. For this, users can refer to the table *RGB PCLK Frequency in EXTSYNC mode* in the **Parallel RGB Interface** section of the BT817/8 datasheet which has recommended values. This can be used instead of CMD_PCLKFREQ in all cases and is particularly recommended when no flash is fitted.

Examples

```
//Assume the first 4096 bytes of flash chip is installed with Blob
//Switch the state of flash to full-speed mode
cmd_flashfast(0);

//......


//To set the output PCLK as close to 9 MHz as possible:

cmd_pclkfreq(9000000, 0, 0);
```

Note: BT817/8 specific command

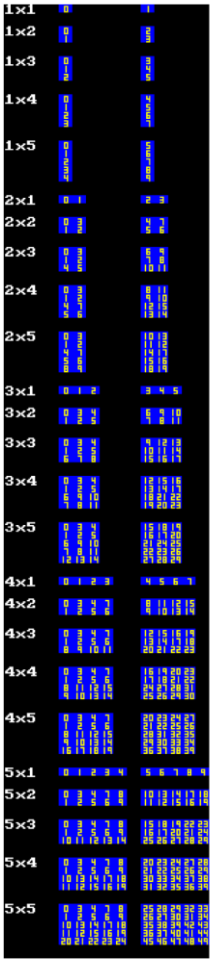
Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

6 ASTC

ASTC stands for **A**daptive **S**calable **T**exture **C**ompression, an open standard developed by **ARM®** for use in mobile GPUs. **ASTC** is a block-based lossy compression format. The compressed image is divided into a number of blocks of uniform size, which makes it possible to quickly determine which block a given texel resides in. Each block has a fixed memory footprint of 128 bits, but these bits can represent varying numbers of texels (the block footprint).Block footprint sizes are not confined to powers-of-two, and are also not confined to be square. For 2D formats the block dimensions range from 4 to 12 texels. Using ASTC for the large ROM fonts can save considerable space. Encoding the four largest fonts in ASTC format gives no noticeable loss in quality and reduces the ROM size from 1M Byte to about 640K Kbytes.

BT81X series empowers animation features and **Unicode** support based on **ASTC** format. Through ASTC format, BT81X Series is able to show images directly from flash memory without taking the precious **RAM_G** space. With enough ASTC images in flash memory or **RAM_G**, it is possible for user to construct an image-rich **GUI** application.

6.1 ASTC RAM Layout



ASTC blocks represent between 4x4 to 12x12 pixels. Each block is 16 bytes in memory. Please see the Table 13 – BITMAP_LAYOUT Format List for more details. In a nutshell, 4x4 stands for lowest compression rate but best quality while 12x12 means for highest compression rate but worst quality. Users may need evaluate the image quality of various **ASTC blocks** on hardware in order to achieve the trade-off.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

ASTC bitmaps in main memory must be 16-byte aligned. However, for a multi-cell bitmap to use the **CELL** command, the source address of each bitmap cell must start on a multiple of 4 blocks, i.e., 64-byte aligned.

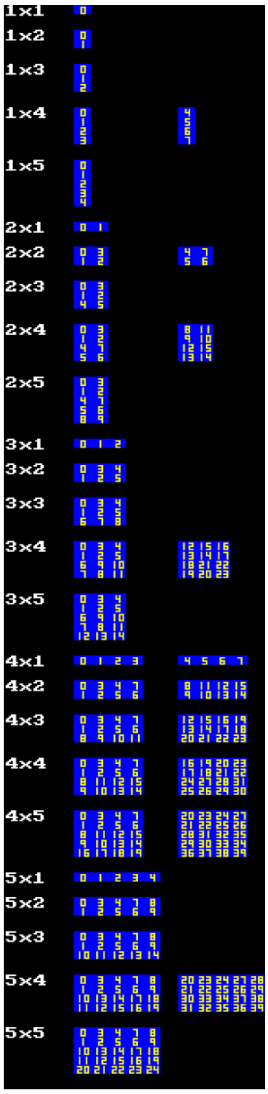
The mapping from bitmap coordinates to memory locations is not always linear. Instead blocks are grouped into 2x2 tiles. Within the tile the order is:

0	3
1	2

When there is an odd number of blocks on a line, the final two blocks are packed into a 1x2. When there is an odd number of rows, then the final row of blocks is linear.

The above diagram shows the same piece of memory loaded with ASTC blocks drawn with ascending memory addresses. The first column shows the addresses used by cell 0, the second column cell 1.

6.2 ASTC Flash Layout



ASTC bitmaps in flash must be 64-byte aligned. This means that multi-celled bitmaps must have a size which is a multiple of 4 blocks. In particular fonts in flash must use a multiple of four blocks per character. Note that only bitmaps with multiple-of-four size have cell 1 shown.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

7 Contact Information

Head Quarters – Singapore

Bridgetek Pte Ltd
178 Paya Lebar Road, #07-03
Singapore 409030
Tel: +65 6547 4827
Fax: +65 6841 6071

E-mail (Sales) sales.apac@brtchip.com
E-mail (Support) support.apac@brtchip.com

Branch Office – Taipei, Taiwan

Bridgetek Pte Ltd, Taiwan Branch
2 Floor, No. 516, Sec. 1, Nei Hu Road, Nei Hu District
Taipei 114
Taiwan, R.O.C.
Tel: +886 (2) 8797 5691
Fax: +886 (2) 8751 9737

E-mail (Sales) sales.apac@brtchip.com
E-mail (Support) support.apac@brtchip.com

Branch Office - Glasgow, United Kingdom

Bridgetek Pte. Ltd.
Unit 1, 2 Seaward Place, Centurion Business Park
Glasgow G41 1HH
United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 141 429 2777
Fax: +44 (0) 141 429 2758

E-mail (Sales) sales.emea@brtichip.com
E-mail (Support) support.emea@brtchip.com

Branch Office – Vietnam

Bridgetek VietNam Company Limited
Lutaco Tower Building, 5th Floor, 173A Nguyen Van Troi,
Ward 11, Phu Nhuan District,
Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam
Tel : 08 38453222
Fax : 08 38455222

E-mail (Sales) sales.apac@brtchip.com
E-mail (Support) support.apac@brtchip.com

Web Site

http://brtchip.com/

Distributor and Sales Representatives

Please visit the Sales Network page of the Bridgetek Web site for the contact details of our distributor(s) and sales representative(s) in your country.

System and equipment manufacturers and designers are responsible to ensure that their systems, and any Bridgetek Pte Limited (BRTChip) devices incorporated in their systems, meet all applicable safety, regulatory and system-level performance requirements. All application-related information in this document (including application descriptions, suggested Bridgetek devices and other materials) is provided for reference only. While Bridgetek has taken care to assure it is accurate, this information is subject to customer confirmation, and Bridgetek disclaims all liability for system designs and for any applications assistance provided by Bridgetek. Use of Bridgetek devices in life support and/or safety applications is entirely at the user's risk, and the user agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Bridgetek from any and all damages, claims, suits or expense resulting from such use. This document is subject to change without notice. No freedom to use patents or other intellectual property rights is implied by the publication of this document. Neither the whole nor any part of the information contained in, or the product described in this document, may be adapted or reproduced in any material or electronic form without the prior written consent of the copyright holder. Bridgetek Pte Limited, 178 Paya Lebar Road, #07-03, Singapore 409030. Singapore Registered Company Number: 201542387H.

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Appendix A – References

Document References

BT815/6 Datasheet
BT817/8 Datasheet
OpenGL 4.5 Reference Pages

Acronyms and Abbreviations

Terms	Description
ADC	Analog-to-digital
API	Application Programming Interface
AVI	Audio Video Interactive
ASTC	Adaptive Scalable Texture Compression
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
CTPM	Capacitive Touch Panel Module
CTSE	Capacitive Touch Screen Engine
EVE	Embedded Video Engine
FIFO	First In First Out buffer
I^2C	Inter-Integrated Circuit
JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
MCU	Micro controller unit
MPU	Microprocessor Unit
PCB	Printed Circuit Board
PCM	Pulse-Code Modulation
PNG	Portable Network Graphics
PWM	Pulse Width Modulation
RAM	Random Access Memory
RTE	Resistive Touch Engine
ROM	Read Only Memory
SPI	Serial Peripheral Interface

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Appendix B – List of Tables/ Figures/ Registers/ Code Snippets

List of Tables

Table 1 – API Reference Definitions 12
Table 2 – Updated Commands in BT81X 13
Table 3 – Memory Map 14
Table 4 – Read Chip Identification Code 16
Table 5 – Flash Interface states and commands 19
Table 6 – Bitmap Rendering Performance 27
Table 7 – Common Registers Summary 35
Table 8 – RTE Registers Summary 37
Table 9 – CTSE Registers Summary 40
Table 10 – Graphics Context 54
Table 11 – Graphics Primitive Definition 57
Table 12 – Bitmap formats and bits per pixel 58
Table 13 – BITMAP_LAYOUT Format List 59
Table 14 – L1/L2/L4/L8 Pixel Format 61
Table 15 – ARGB2/RGB332 Pixel Format 61
Table 16 – RGB565/PALETTED565 Pixel Format 61
Table 17 – ARGB1555/ARGB4/PALETTED4444 Pixel Format 61
Table 18 – PALETTED8 Pixel Format 62
Table 19 – BLEND_FUNC Constant Value Definition 72
Table 20 – STENCIL_OP Constants Definition 89
Table 21 – VERTEX_FORMAT and Pixel Precision 93
Table 22 – Widgets Color Setup Table 97
Table 23 – Legacy Font Metrics Block 98
Table 24 – Extended Font Metrics Block 99
Table 25 – String Format Specifier 106
Table 26 – Coprocessor Faults Strings 108
Table 27 – Coprocessor Engine Graphics State 108
Table 28 – Parameter OPTION Definition 110

List of Figures

Figure 1 – BT81X data flow 15
Figure 2 – Getting Started Example 21
Figure 3 – Widget List 96
Figure 4 – ROM Font List 102

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

List of Registers

Register Definition 1 – REG_TAG Definition 28
Register Definition 2 – REG_TAG_Y Definition 28
Register Definition 3 – REG_TAG_X Definition 28
Register Definition 4 – REG_PCLK Definition 29
Register Definition 5 – REG_PCLK_POL Definition 29
Register Definition 6 – REG_CSPREAD Definition 29
Register Definition 7 – REG_SWIZZLE Definition 29
Register Definition 8 – REG_DITHER Definition 29
Register Definition 9 – REG_OUTBITS Definition 29
Register Definition 10 – REG_ROTATE Definition 30
Register Definition 11 – REG_DLSWAP Definition 30
Register Definition 12 – REG_VSYNC1 Definition 30
Register Definition 13 – REG_VSYNC0 Definition 30
Register Definition 14 – REG_VSIZE Definition 31
Register Definition 15 – REG_VOFFSET Definition 31
Register Definition 16 – REG_VCYCLE Definition 31
Register Definition 17 – REG_HSYNC1 Definition 31
Register Definition 18 – REG_HSYNC0 Definition 31
Register Definition 19 – REG_HSIZE Definition 31
Register Definition 20 – REG_HOFFSET Definition 31
Register Definition 21 – REG_HCYCLE Definition 32
Register Definition 22 – REG_PLAY Definition 32
Register Definition 23 – REG_SOUND Definition 32
Register Definition 24 – REG_VOL_SOUND Definition 32
Register Definition 25 – REG_VOL_PB Definition 32
Register Definition 26 – REG_PLAYBACK_PLAY Definition 33
Register Definition 27 – REG_PLAYBACK_LOOP Definition 33
Register Definition 28 – REG_PLAYBACK_FORMAT Definition 33
Register Definition 29 – REG_PLAYBACK_FREQ Definition 33
Register Definition 30 – REG_PLAYBACK_READPTR Definition 33
Register Definition 31 – REG_PLAYBACK_LENGTH Definition 34
Register Definition 32 – REG_PLAYBACK_START Definition 34
Register Definition 33 – REG_PLAYBACK_PAUSE Definition 34
Register Definition 34 – REG_FLASH_STATUS Definition 34
Register Definition 35 – REG_FLASH_SIZE Definition 34
Register Definition 36 – REG_TOUCH_CONFIG Definition 35
Register Definition 37 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_F Definition 35
Register Definition 38 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_E Definition 36

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Register Definition 39 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_D Definition 36
Register Definition 40 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_C Definition 36
Register Definition 41 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_B Definition 36
Register Definition 42 – REG_TOUCH_TRANSFORM_A Definition 36
Register Definition 43 – REG_TOUCH_TAG Definition 37
Register Definition 44 – REG_TOUCH_TAG_XY Definition 37
Register Definition 45 – REG_TOUCH_SCREEN_XY Definition 37
Register Definition 46 – REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_Z1Z2 Definition 38
Register Definition 47 – REG_TOUCH_DIRECT_XY 38
Register Definition 48 – REG_TOUCH_RZ Definition 38
Register Definition 49 – REG_TOUCH_RAW_XY Definition 38
Register Definition 50 – REG_TOUCH_RZTHRESH Definition 39
Register Definition 51 – REG_TOUCH_OVERSAMPLE Definition 39
Register Definition 52 – REG_TOUCH_SETTLE Definition 39
Register Definition 53 – REG_TOUCH_CHARGE Definition 39
Register Definition 54 – REG_TOUCH_ADC_MODE Definition 39
Register Definition 55 – REG_TOUCH_MODE Definition 40
Register Definition 56 – REG_CTOUCH_MODE Definition 41
Register Definition 57 – REG_CTOUCH_EXTENDED Definition 41
Register Definition 58 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH_XY Definition 41
Register Definition 59 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH1_XY Definition 41
Register Definition 60 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH2_XY Definition 41
Register Definition 61 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH3_XY Definition 42
Register Definition 62 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_X Definition 42
Register Definition 63 – REG_CTOUCH_TOUCH4_Y Definition 42
Register Definition 64 – REG_CTOUCH_RAW_XY Definition 42
Register Definition 65 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG Definition 42
Register Definition 66 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG1 Definition 43
Register Definition 67 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG2 Definition 43
Register Definition 68 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG3 Definition 43
Register Definition 69 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG4 Definition 43
Register Definition 70 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG_XY Definition 44
Register Definition 71 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG1_XY Definition 44
Register Definition 72 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG2_XY Definition 44
Register Definition 73 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG3_XY Definition 44
Register Definition 74 – REG_CTOUCH_TAG4_XY Definition 44
Register Definition 75 – REG_CMD_DL Definition 45
Register Definition 76 – REG_CMD_WRITE Definition 45
Register Definition 77 – REG_CMD_READ Definition 45
Register Definition 78 – REG_CMDB_SPACE Definition 46

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Register Definition 79 – REG_CMDB_WRITE Definition 46
Register Definition 80 – REG_CPURESET Definition 46
Register Definition 81 – REG_MACRO_1 Definition 46
Register Definition 82 – REG_MACRO_0 Definition 46
Register Definition 83 – REG_PWM_DUTY Definition 47
Register Definition 84 – REG_PWM_HZ Definition 47
Register Definition 85 – REG_INT_MASK Definition 47
Register Definition 86 – REG_INT_EN Definition 47
Register Definition 87 – REG_INT_FLAGS Definition 47
Register Definition 88 – REG_GPIO_DIR Definition 48
Register Definition 89 – REG_GPIO Definition 48
Register Definition 90 – REG_GPIOX_DIR Definition 48
Register Definition 91 – REG_GPIOX Definition 49
Register Definition 92 – REG_FREQUENCY Definition 49
Register Definition 93 – REG_CLOCK Definition 49
Register Definition 94 – REG_FRAMES Definition 49
Register Definition 95 – REG_ID Definition 49
Register Definition 96 – REG_SPI_WIDTH Definition 50
Register Definition 97 – REG_ADAPTIVE_FRAMERATE Definition 50
Register Definition 98 – REG_UNDERRUN Definition 50
Register Definition 99 – REG_AH_HCYCLE_MAX Definition 50
Register Definition 100 – REG_PCLK_FREQ Definition 51
Register Definition 101 – REG_PCLK_2X Definition 51
Register Definition 102 – REG_TRACKER Definition 51
Register Definition 103 – REG_TRACKER_1 Definition 52
Register Definition 104 – REG_TRACKER_2 Definition 52
Register Definition 105 – REG_TRACKER_3 Definition 52
Register Definition 106 – REG_TRACKER_4 Definition 52
Register Definition 107 – REG_MEDIAFIFO_READ Definition 52
Register Definition 108 – REG_MEDIAFIFO_WRITE Definition 53
Register Definition 109 – REG_PLAY_CONTROL Definition 53
Register Definition 110 – REG_ANIM_ACTIVE Definition 53
Register Definition 111 – REG_COPRO_PATCH_PTR Definition 53

List of Code Snippets

Code Snippet 1 – Initialization Sequence 17
Code Snippet 2 – Play C8 on the Xylophone 19
Code snippet 3 – Stop Playing Sound 20
Code snippet 4 – Avoid Pop Sound 20
Code Snippet 5 – Audio Playback 20

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Code Snippet 6 – Check the status of Audio Playback 20
Code Snippet 7 – Stop the Audio Playback 20
Code Snippet 8 – Getting Started..... 21
Code Snippet 9 – Color and Transparency 26
Code Snippet 10 – PALETTED8 Drawing Example 62

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

Appendix C – Revision History

Document Title: BRT_AN_033 BT81X Series Programming Guide

Document Reference No.: BRT_000225

Clearance No.: BRT#129

Product Page: http://brtchip.com/product/

Document Feedback: Send Feedback

Revision	Changes	Date (DD-MM-YYYY)
Version 1.0	Initial release	14-08-2018
Version 1.1	Corrected the reset value of Bitmap_transform_A/B/D/E; Added the limitation of cmd_loadimage for PNG image : top 42K bytes of RAM_G is overwritten; Fixed the typo of cmd_flashfast; Added the flash driver information; Fixed the typo in cmd_track example; Added more explanation for cmd_interrupt Added the missing definition of OPT_FILL Removed GL_FORMAT in extended font format, Added the exception of bitmap format in font metrics block. Fixed the broken reference. Updated the ASTC RAM layout image.	03-07-2019
Version 1.2	Updated statement in CMD_VIDEOFRAME	30-03-2020
Version 2.0	Added description for BT817/8 Enhanced the register tables and command example code format (CMD_GETPTR & CMD_CLEARCACHE) Example added for CMD_CLEARCACHE The -1 definition of channel number for animation playback removed Updated Table 28 (Added Parameter option - OPT_DITHER)	07-07-2020
Version 2.1	Updated the Table of Flash Interface; Updated the Sample code to cover the RAM_CMD wrapup use case; Updated the Section 5.4 to reflect CMD_KEYS does not support UTFB characters; Deleted the obsolete CMD_SKETCH; Fixed the mute sound value in the code snippet "Avoid Pop Sound"	07-06-2021
Version 2.2	Fixed multiple minor format and typo issues; Used lower case for commands parameters; Updated the conversion specifier 'c' and 's' in string format section from upper case to lower case; Corrected the bit per pixel value for ASTC 8x8,10x5,10x6 in table 12: Bitmap formats and bits per pixel; Added the missing member in xfont structure	24-09-2021
Version 2.3	Updated the following - • Section "Register Definition 100 – REG_PCLK_FREQ Definition" to correct the bits and also section "5.111 CMD_PCLKFREQ" to add notes about using the command. • Removed the 300ms delay from Code Snippet 1 – Initialization Sequence • Change the fast mode of flash to full-speed mode of flash • Example code of cmd_plkfreq • Fix the REG_SPI_WIDTH offset to 0x188 • Remove the disable feature description of cmd_fontcache • Add RST_PULSE in the sample code of bootup sequence • Typo correction: REG_GPIO_X ->REG_GPIOX • Remove the undefined DLSWAP_FRAME • Add the requirement of ASTC multi-cell bitmap: 4 blocks alignment	16-12-2022

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd

	• Modify the maximum bitmap size of Bargraph from 256x256 to screen width to 256. • Add the missing parameter of cmd_memcpy • Improve xfont structure description	

Copyright © Bridgetek Pte Ltd